# 1. Introduction

## 1.1. About the Project

The European Holocaust Research Infrastructure (EHRI) is a transnational organisation with partners all across Europe, Israel and the US. They promote collaboration on Holocaust research and easy access to scattered sources. To this end, they created the EHRI Online Editions, which are collections of archival documents on the Holocaust, gathered around a more specific theme.

## 1.2. About this Document

This document is intended as a means for the homogenisation of encoding practices of the EHRI Online Editions. Editors may indeed vary from one edition to another, and it is essential that the encoding practices are coherent and homogenous throughout the editions.

These encoding guidelines are not a replacement for the original TEI Guidelines, but rather a way to clarify some uses in the context of the EHRI Online Editions, which include many types of documents.

# 2. Encoding Guidelines

XML is a very rich markup language, and the TEI standard provides an extremely large set of elements that can be used to encode textual documents. However, the TEI must be adapted based on the type of document encoded since correspondence, reports and newspaper articles are structurally different, and therefore do not require the same encoding elements.

## 2.1. Ground Rules

### *2.1.1. File Identifier*

The file's identifier only appears once in the <teiHeader> as the value of the *xml:id* attribute in the <TEI> root element. The syntactical structure of the identifier is "EHRI-{collection_id}-{date_source}_{language_id}".

```
xml:id="EHRI-BF-19380120_DE"
```

### *2.1.2. English as the main encoding language*

English should be the main language for metadata encoding in EHRI files as it is a universal language for editors and researchers. In order to facilitate the understanding of the files, whenever it is possible, there should be a proposed English translation for information appearing in their original language, like titles for instance (signaled by an *xml:lang* attribute with the en value):

```
<title xml:lang="en">Richard A. Bermann on his filed escape to
 Czechoslovakia</title>
<title xml:lang="de">Richard A. Bermann über seine gescheiterte Flucht
 in die Tschechoslowakei</title>
```

The keywords associated with the file should be in English (rather than any other language), in lower case and in their singular form:

```
<keywords>
 <term>government document</term>
</keywords>
```

Similarly, attribute values must be in English only, for better understanding.

```
<catRef target="expulsion_policy"/>
```

### *2.1.3. Format of date and language attribute values*

THe format for date and language attributes is predefined:

- When the date is available in the YYYY-MM-DD format, use *when-iso*. In any other case, use *when*.

```
<date when-iso="1939-09-01">September 1, 1939</date>
<date when="1940-06">June 1940</date>
<date when="1945">1945</date>
```

- xml:lang
  Iana Language Subtag Registry
  - Czech: cs
  - Dutch: nl
  - English: en
  - French: fr
  - German: de
  - Hebrew: he
  - Hungarian: hu
  - Italian: it
  - Polish: pl

- Russian: ru
- Slovak: sk
- Ukrainian: uk
- Yiddish: yi

## 2.2. The TEI Header (<teiHeader>)

The <teiHeader> contains the document's metadata. It is divided into four main sections:

- <fileDesc> (description of the electronic file)
- <encodingDesc> (context of the encoding)
- <profileDesc> (description of non-bibliographic aspects of the text)
- <revisionDesc> (revision history of the file)

### *2.2.1. File Description (<fileDesc>)*

The <fileDesc> is composed of:

- **titleStmt** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content.
- **publicationStmt** (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.
- **seriesStmt** (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.
- **sourceDesc** (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence.

*2.2.1.1. Title Statement (<titleStmt>)*

The <titleStmt> is a mandatory element of the <teiHeader>. It delivers information about the document's title, author(s), and/or editor(s).

*2.2.1.1.1. Title (<title>)*

The <title> of the document should at least be given in English. It should also appear in the original language, whenever possible.

```
<title xml:lang="en">Excerpt from an interview with Leopold
 Sonnenfeld about his deportation to Nisko</title>
<title xml:lang="de">Auszug aus einem Interview mit Leopold
 Sonnenfeld über seine Deportation nach Nisko</title>
```

*2.2.1.1.2. Principal Researcher (<principal>)*

The <principal> element contains the <affiliation> element. This embedding of elements aims at naming the institution responsible for the electronic file, which in this case is the European Holocaust Research Infrastructure (given in an <orgName> element).

```
<principal>
 <affiliation>
  <orgName>European Holocaust Research
     Infrastructure</orgName>
 </affiliation>
</principal>
```

*2.2.1.1.3. Statement of Responsibility (<respStmt>)*

The <respStmt> designates the person(s) responsible for the edition of a particular file. They are identified by an element such as <persName> or <orgName>, depending on their status. The <resp> element describes their role in the file processing from digitization to publication.

List of suggested values for <resp>:

- "Digitized by"
- "Transcribed by"
- "Encoded by"

```
<respStmt>
 <resp>Encoded by</resp>
 <persName>Wolfgang Schellenbacher</persName>
</respStmt>
```

If details of the process are unknown, it is possible to use the mention "Edited by", but it must not be the privileged option.

*2.2.1.2. Publication Statement (<publicationStmt>)*

The <publicationStmt> gives information on the publication of the electronic file, and should therefore not be confused with the source description (<sourceDesc>) which holds details on the source document prior to its digitization.

It contains two elements:

- <authority> contains a <ref> element whose value is "European Holocaust Research Infrastructure", with a *target* attribute pointing to the EHRI website.

- <availability> contains a <licence> element and specifies the conditions of distribution and use of the file or project. As the goal of EHRI is the widespread and free disposal of Holocaust sources, the common license used is the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International.

The Creative Commons licenses have varying degrees of restrictions on modification and reuse, which the editors can choose from.

```
<publicationStmt>
 <authority>
  <ref target="https://www.ehri-project.eu">European Holocaust
     Research Infrastructure</ref>
 </authority>
 <availability>
  <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0">Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International</licence>
 </availability>
</publicationStmt>
```

*2.2.1.3. Series Statement (<seriesStmt>)*

The <seriesStmt> holds the name of the digital edition in a <title> element, which has a *ref* attribute with a link to the online edition.

The name of the edition should appear in English.

```
<seriesStmt>
 <title ref="https://nisko-transports.ehri-project.eu/">From
   Vienna to Nowhere: the Nisko Deportations in 1939</title>
</seriesStmt>
```

*2.2.1.4. Source Description (<sourceDesc>)*

*2.2.1.4.1. Manuscript Description (<msDesc>)*

The <msDesc> was originally created to facilitate the encoding of manuscripts, but this set of elements can also be used to encode printed texts. The documents selected for the EHRI Online Editions all come from various institutions with their own collections and identifiers, thus it is relevant to include a manuscript description in the metadata to distinguish the holding institution from the publishing institution.

The <msDesc> contains:

- **msIdentifier** (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript or similar object being described.
- **physDesc** (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object optionally subdivided using more specialized elements from the model.physDescPart class.

*2.2.1.4.1.1. Manuscript Identifier (<msIdentifier>)*

The <msIdentifier> gives information on the source document and its holding institution:

- The <institution> element contains its name and address.
- The <collection> element specifies the name of the document's collection in the catalogue.
- The <idno> designates the document's identifier in their catalogue.

The <repository> element may be used instead of, or following, the <institution> element on the rare occasions where the document is held outside of the holding institution's main address (e.g. secondary site).

```
<msIdentifier>
 <institution>
  <orgName ref="https://portal.ehri-project.eu/institutions/gb-003348">The Wiener Holocaust Library</orgName>
  <address>
   <street>
    <num>29</num> Russel Square</street>
   <postCode>WC1B 5DP</postCode>
   <settlement type="city">London</settlement>
   <country ref="https://portal.ehri-project.eu/countries/gb">United Kingdom</country>
  </address>
 </institution>
 <collection>Eyewitness testimony collection</collection>
 <idno>1656/4/4/866</idno>
</msIdentifier>
```

*2.2.1.4.1.2. Physical Description (<physDesc>)*

The physical description of the source document is optional. If the document is peculiar or has specificities, we might encode the <physDesc> with a <p> element.

```
<physDesc>
 <p>Red annotations in the margins.</p>
</physDesc>
```

*2.2.1.4.2. Bibliographic Citation (<bibl>)*

The <bibl> element provides a bibliographic description of the source document. It usually contains the name of the holding institution, the name of the collection, and the source document's identifier. The only mandatory component is <textLang> with the mention "Original in {language}", and a *mainLang* attribute. The values for both attributes must match the Iana Language Subtag Registry.

```
<bibl>Hungarian Jewish Archives, DEGOB, Protocol no. 651.
<textLang mainLang="hu">Original in
   Hungarian.</textLang>
</bibl>
```

### 2.2.2. Encoding Description (<encodingDesc>)

The <encodingDesc> contains the project description (<projectDesc>) in a <p> element, with an *xml:lang* attribute.

```
<encodingDesc>
 <projectDesc>
  <p xml:lang="en">This document was encoded as part of EHRI
     Online Editions.</p>
 </projectDesc>
</encodingDesc>
```

### 2.2.3. Text-Profile Description (<profileDesc>)

#### 2.2.3.1. Creation (<creation>)

The <creation> element provides information on the source document's creation. It can contain several sub-elements depending on the availability of information:

- <origDate>: date of creation, written in a "Day Month Year" format (e.g. "16 August 1941"), with a *when* or *when-iso* attribute.
- <origPlace>: names of the city and country, with a *ref* attribute with a link to the place's GeoNames webpage.
- <persName>: name of the source document's author, with a *ref* attribute pointing to the person's EHRI index entry.

```
<creation>
 <origDate when-iso="1943-05-28">28 May 1943</origDate>
 <origPlace ref="https://www.geonames.org/683506/bucharest.html">Bucharest, Romania</origPlace>
 <persName ref="#ehri_dr_biering_erik_andreas_mathias">Erik
   Andreas Mathias Biering</persName>
</creation>
```

#### 2.2.3.2. Text Classification (<textClass>)

The <textClass> element provides information on the content of the document. It contains an empty <catRef> element, with a *target* attribute refering to the text's typology. The category reference is followed by the <keywords> element, in which every keyword is specified with a <term> element.

```
<textClass>
 <catRef target="history/austria_until_1938"/>
 <keywords>
  <term>state document</term>
 </keywords>
</textClass>
```

#### 2.2.3.3. Language Usage (<langUsage>)

The <langUsage> element references all the languages appearing in the source document. For instance, in a document written in German with a few Yiddish terms, both languages will be referenced in a <language> element completed by an *ident* attribute.

```
<langUsage>
 <language ident="de">German</language>
 <language ident="yi">Yiddish</language>
</langUsage>
```

#### 2.2.3.4. Abstract (<abstract>)

The <abstract> provides a brief summary of the source document's content in a paragraph (<p>) in English.

```
<p xml:lang="en">Testimony of 16-year-old K. H. on the deportation
 of his family to Kamenets-Podolsk in the summer of 1941, hiding
 in K#rösmez#/Yasina, finding shelter in a Jewish orphans' home
 in Budapest, his arrest and deportation to Auschwitz, his
 experiences in Buchenwald, the IG Farben (Brabag) synthetic fuel
 factory in Rehmsdorf, and his liberation in Theresienstadt.</p>
```

### 2.2.4. Revision Description (<revisionDesc>)

The <revisionDesc> summarizes the changes made to the file. All revisions of the file are recorded in <change> elements, organized in reverse chronological order. The <change> element has two mandatory attributes:

- *when*: date of revision.
- *who*: person responsible for the revision. The syntax for the value of *who* is: "#forename.surname".

```
<revisionDesc>
 <change when="2021-11-05"
  who="#floriane.chiffoleau">Upgrading TEI
   encoding</change>
 <change when="2020" who="#ehri">Encoding of the file</change>
</revisionDesc>
```

## 2.3. The Body (<body>)

### 2.3.1. Structuring the transcription

#### 2.3.1.1. Basic text structure

The <body> of the TEI file is composed of nested  elements, which take a mandatory *type* attribute. The value of *type* depends on the structure of the document, but for the first-level  the value is either "transcription" or "translation."

```
<div type="transcription">
 <p>An das Bezirksgendarmerie Kommando, alle Gend. Posten
```

```
  Kommandos und die Grenzkontrollstelle in Berg.</p>
</div>
```

Within the first-level division, the sections are also divided within  elements, which can be numbered with the *n* attribute. If the sections are titled, the title should appear in a <head> element:

```
<div type="transcription" xml:lang="de">
 <pb n="1" facs="EHRI-NISKO-193910a_01.jpg"/>
 <head>Betrifft: Umschichtung von Juden - Durchführung der
   Transporte.</head>
 <div n="1">
  <head>I. Vorbereitungen:</head>
  <p>
   <lb/>Die genaue namentliche Erfassung der mittellosen
     Juden deut<lb break="no"/>scher, polnischer und
     tschechischer Staatsangehörigkeit, so<lb break="no"/>wie
     staatenloser Juden, ist rechtzeitig durchzuführen.</p>
  <p>[...]</p>
 </div>
 <div n="2">
  <head>II. Ausmusterung:</head>
  <p>
   <lb/>Die für den Transport von den jüd. Gemeinden
     eingeteilten Ju<lb break="no"/>den sind
     zweckmäßigerweise vor Abgang des Zuges in geeigne<lb break="no"/>ten, in der Nähe des Bahnhofs gelegenen,
     Sälen zu konzen<lb break="no"/>trieren. Die Juden haben
     mit ihrem Gepäck zu erscheinen, da <lb/>nach der
     Ausmusterung sofort mit der Einwaggonierung begonnen
  <lb/>wird.</p>
  <p>[...]</p>
 </div>
</div>
```

The paragraphs are naturally encoded with the <p> element.

*2.3.1.2. Reproducing the structure of the facsimile*

*2.3.1.2.1. Layout*

- **pb** (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document.
- **lb** (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.
- **space** (space) indicates the location of a significant space in the text.
- **metamark** contains or describes any kind of graphic or written signal within a document the function of which is to determine how it should be read rather than forming part of the actual content of the document.

*2.3.1.2.1.1. Page beginning (<pb>)*

The <pb> element is an empty element which marks the beginning of a new page, corresponding to the image of the facsimile. It appears at the start of the transcribed page, and takes the *facs* attribute, the value of which is the corresponding image file of the page. All <pb> are numbered with the *n* attribute.

```
<pb n="2" facs="EHRI-NISKO-193910a_02.jpg"/>
```

*2.3.1.2.1.2. Line beginning (<lb>)*

The <lb> element is an empty element that marks the beginning of a new typographic line.

For the transcription to be as close as possible to the layout of the source document, the <lb> element can appear in the middle of words, in which case it takes the *break* attribute with the value "no" to signal that even though it is physically the end of the line, it is not the end of the semantic bloc.

```
<p>
 <lb/>Die für den Transport von den jüd. Gemeinden
 eingeteilten Ju<lb break="no"/>den sind
 zweckmäßigerweise vor Abgang des Zuges in geeigne<lb break="no"/>ten, in der Nähe des Bahnhofs gelegenen,
 Sälen zu konzen<lb break="no"/>trieren. Die Juden haben
 mit ihrem Gepäck zu erscheinen, da <lb/>nach der
 Ausmusterung sofort mit der Einwaggonierung begonnen
<lb/>wird.
</p>
```

*2.3.1.2.1.3. Space (<space>)*

If there is a significant space in the text, it should be signaled with the <space> element. The *dim* attribute indicates whether the space is horizontal or vertical. The description of the physical space is done with the help of the *quantity* and *unit* attributes.

```
<space dim="horizontal" quantity="10"
 unit="mm"/>
```

*2.3.1.2.1.4. Elements of visual division (<metamark>)*

Whenever there is a division within the text marked with anything other than significant spacing, it is recommended to use the empty <metamark> element. It takes two mandatory attributes: *function* and *style*:

- The value of the *function* attribute is always "division."
- The *style* attribute describes the visual division. Suggested values include: "crosses," "line," "stars" and "dots."
- If there is a name for the type of division used, it appears in a *type* attribute.

```
<metamark function="division" style="stars"
 type="dinkus"/>
```

*2.3.1.2.2. Lists (<list>)*

Lists should be encoded with a <list> element, within which there are <item> elements. As the <item> element displays bullet points, if the items are numbered in the document, they should be encoded with the <label> element.

```
<p>Die Berichterstattung hat durch Vorlage von Verzeichnissen
<lb/>zu erfolgen, die am 1. und 15. jeden Monates h.a.
 einzutreffen haben <lb/>und in welchen nach Möglichkeit
 folgende Daten anzuführen sind: <list>
  <label>1.)</label>
  <item>Name und Personaldaten (insbesonders auch
     Staatsbürgerschaft) der in Frage kommenden
     ausländischen Staatsangehörigen,</item>
  <label>2.)</label>
  <item>Zeitpunkt und Ort der Betretung der ausländischen
     Staatsangehörigen auf österreichischem
     Gebiet,</item>
  <label>3.)</label>
  <item>Zeitpunkt, Ort und nähere Umstände der Abdrängung
     über die österreichische Grenze.</item>
 </list>
</p>
```

*2.3.1.2.3. Tables (<table>)*

Tables are encoded with the <table> element, which contains several <row> elements. The number of columns is defined by the number of <cell> elements within <row>.

Structure:

- Rows are presented from top to bottom.
- Columns are presented left to right within each row.

For better understanding, it is possible to indicate the number of rows and columns with the *rows* and *cols* attibutes in the <table> tag.

```
<table cols="5" rows="2">
 <row>
  <cell>Name</cell>
  <cell>Geburtsort</cell>
  <cell>Schuleberuf</cell>
  <cell>Wohnort</cell>
  <cell>Familienstand</cell>
 </row>
 <row>
  <cell>
   <persName ref="#ehri_et_rubinstyn_marta"
    type="ehri">
    <surname>Rubinstyn</surname>
    <forename>Marta</forename>
   </persName>
  </cell>
  <cell>
   <p>1906</p>
   <p>15/IX <placeName ref="#belzyce" type="ehri">#######</placeName>
   </p>
  </cell>
  <cell>############</cell>
  <cell>
   <placeName ref="#munich" type="ehri">- ###
#######       </placeName>
  </cell>
  <cell>#########</cell>
 </row>
</table>
```

*2.3.1.3. Further division: openers and closers*

Some documents like letters or reports can be described in more details than with simple divisions, with an opener and/or a closer. The elements possibly contained in either opener or closer include:

- **address** (address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.
- **addrLine** (address line) contains one line of a postal address.
- **byline** (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.
- **dateline** (dateline) contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.
- **salute** (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.
- **signed** (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

```
<opener>
 <byline>THE FOREIGN SERVICE <lb/>OF THE <lb/>UNITED STATES OF
   AMERICA </byline>
 <dateline>
  <address>
```

```
   <addrLine>AMERICAN CONSULATE GENERAL</addrLine>
   <addrLine>Istanbul, Turkey</addrLine>
  </address>, <date when-iso="1943-01-27">January 27,
     1943</date>.</dateline>
</opener>
<closer>
 <salute>Respectfully yours,</salute>
 <signed>
  <persName>Burton Y. Berry</persName>
  <lb/>American Consul </signed>
</closer>
```

### *2.3.2. Displaying the text*

*2.3.2.1. Named entities (`<persName>`, `<placeName>` or `<orgName>`) and references (`<rs>`)*

Named entities are encoded in two ways. If a person, place or organization is referred to by its name, then they should be encoded with <persName>, <placeName> or <orgName> accordingly.

```
<persName>Franciszek Stoch</persName>
<persName>Deputy Stoch</persName>
```

However, if a names entity is mentioned without any proper name, then it should be encoded with <rs>. The reference string element contains a reference to a named entity which is not named by its full name, and takes the text's context into account. It takes two mandatory attributes:

- *type*: "org", "person" or "place".
- *ref*: reference to the *xml:id* in the index.

```
<rs type="person"
 ref="ehri_et_stoch_franciszek">the deputy</rs>
```

*2.3.2.2. Foreign languages (`<foreign>`)*

Words, expressions and text passages in a language other than the document's main language are encoded with the <foreign> element. It takes a mandatory *xml:lang* attribute, which comes with a semi-closed list of values containing the languages used, at least once or that could potentially be used, by the EHRI editions.

```
<p xml:lang="cs">Tábor #ítal asi 1800 muž#, v#tšinou ma#arských
 Žid#, a kdo neum#l ma#arsky, byl skoro ztracen. Bydlili jsme
 v t. zv. <foreign xml:lang="de">Erdbunker</foreign> – dlouhé,
 podzemní baráky s jedním oknem, dv# #ady prken na spaní,
 uprost#ed komín a kamínka. Každý v#ze# m#l deku, misku a
 lžíci.</p>
```

*2.3.2.3. Highlighted text (`<hi>`)*

When a part of the text is graphically distinct from the rest of the text, it should be encoded with <hi>.

```
<hi rend="italic">G. E. R. Gedye, Die Bastionen fielen. Wie der
 Faschismus Wien und Prag überrannte.</hi>
```

*2.3.2.4. Unclear parts of the text (`<unclear>`) and deletions (`<del>`)*

Passages that are hard to read should be encoded accordingly. When the text is difficult to read for reasons dealing with the conservation of the document, <unclear> should be used with the *reason* attribute.

```
The Gestapo told us
that they would take us to work at a good place. On <unclear reason="faded">our</unclear> arrival in Auschwitz they separated
me from the rest of my family and I had no idea what was in store
for me.
```

When a passage has been explicitly deleted from the text by someone, it should be encoded with <del> which takes the mandatory attribute *rend*.

```
Samstag den 14. Okt.
1939 um <del rend="strikethrough">10</del>, <del rend="strikethrough">12</del>, 14, <del rend="strikethrough">16</del> Uhrim Kuppelsaale, 2.,
zuverlässig zu erscheinen.
```

# 3. Indices

There are four indices for the EHRI Online Editions, with one file for each index:

- Index of Organizations
- Index of Persons
- Index of Places
- Index of Terms

## 3.1. Index of Organizations

The index of organizations is contained in a <listOrg> element. Each organization appears within an <org> element with an *xml:id*. The name of the organization appears twice in <orgName> elements, distinguished by an *xml:lang* attribute. Thus, the name of the organization should first appear in English and then in its original language, depending on the availability of such information. The name of the organization is followed by a description (<desc>) in English, with a reference (*ref*) to the entity on the EHRI portal. The location of the organization is indicated with a <place> element and its *xml:id*. In the same way as the name of the organization, if the <placeName> is available in English and its original language, then there are two elements. The city where the organization is located is indicated with the <settlement> element and the *type* attribute with the value "city." If the organization has a VIAF (Virtual International Authority File), it is encoded in the <idno> element, specified by the *type* attribute with the value "VIAF."

```
<listOrg>
 <org xml:id="ehri_cb-1269">
  <orgName xml:lang="en">State Security Headquarters</orgName>
  <orgName xml:lang="sk">Ústred#a štátnej bezpe#nosti</orgName>
  <desc xml:lang="en"
   ref="https://portal.ehri-project.eu/authorities/ehri_cb-1269">The State Security Headquarters was the highest police
     authority of Slovak Republic (1939-1945). It was the secret
     service and political police of Tiso´s regime with the defensive
     intelligence task.</desc>
  <place>
   <country key="SK"/>
  </place>
 </org>
</listOrg>
```

## 3.2. Index of Persons

The index of persons is contained in a <listPerson> element. Every person appears within a <person> element with an *xml:id*. The name of the person is encoded within a <persName> element containing at least the <forename> and <surname> elements, and possibly completed by the <nameLink> element. The <birth> and <death> element are composed of a <date> element with the *when-iso* attribute (or *when* if the full date is unknown) and a <placeName> element. The sex of the person is given by the `<element>` with the *value* attribute, which is either "M" for "Male," "F" for "Female," or "U" for "Unknown." The person's occupation appears in the <occupation> element. If the person has a VIAF (Virtual International Authority File) or GND (Gemeinsname Normdatei) identifier, it is encoded in the <idno> element, specified by the *type* attribute with the value "VIAF" or "GND" accordingly. When the life of the person is marked by one or more events, they appear as <event> elements with a *when* attribute, and a nested description paragraph in a <p> element).

```
<listPerson>
 <person xml:id="ehri_pers-000462">
  <persName>
   <forename>Karl</forename>
   <surname>Brandt</surname>
  </persName>
  <birth>
   <date when-iso="1904-01-08"/>
   <placeName>Mulhouse, Alsace-Lorraine, Germany</placeName>
  </birth>
  <death>
   <date when-iso="1948-06-02"/>
   <placeName>Landsberg Prison, Germany</placeName>
  </death>
  <sex value="M"/>
  <occupation>physician</occupation>
  <idno type="VIAF">8181132</idno>
  <event>
   <p>Personal physician of German dictator Adolf
       Hitler.</p>
  </event>
 </person>
</listPerson>
```

## 3.3. Index of Places

The index of places is contained in a <listPlace> element. The places appear within a <place> element, specified by two attributes: *type* (e.g. "camp," city," etc.) and *xml:id*. Just like in the indices of organizations and persons, the name of the place appears (whenever available) both in its original language and its English translation, in two separate <placeName> elements distinguished by the value of their *xml:lang* attribute. The geographical coordinates of the place are contained in the <geo> element, within a <location> element. The country is specified in the <country> element by the mandatory *key* attribute. There are two types of identifiers for places, contained in <idno> elements with a *type* attribute ("geonames" and "wikidata)." The <note> element contains a brief description of the place.

```
<listPlace>
 <place type="camp" xml:id="ehri_camps-0"
  ref="https://portal.ehri-project.eu/units/de-002429-ns_4_au">
  <placeName xml:lang="en">Auschwitz Concentration Camp</placeName>
  <placeName xml:lang="de">Konzentrationslager Auschwitz</placeName>
  <location>
   <geo>50.02708, 19.2032</geo>
   <country key="PL"/>
  </location>
  <idno type="geonames">11862441</idno>
  <idno type="wikidata">Q7341</idno>
  <note>German network of concentration and extermination camps in
     occupied Poland during World War II</note>
 </place>
</listPlace>
```

## 3.4. Index of Terms

The index of terms is contained in a <list> element. Each term is encoded with the <item> element and its *xml:id*. The <name> of the term should appear at least in its original language and in English. It can also appear in other

languages if the translation is available. The term is described thanks to the <desc> element. The `<link>` element contains the link to the term's entry in the controlled vocabulary on the EHRI portal with the *target* attribute. If the term has a Wikidata page, its identifier should appear in an <idno> element with the *type* attribute, whose value is "wikidata."

```
<list>
 <item xml:id="ehri_terms-517">
  <name xml:lang="en">death marches</name>
  <name xml:lang="de">Todesmarsch</name>
  <name xml:lang="fr">marche de la mort</name>
  <name xml:lang="cs">pochody smrti</name>
  <desc xml:lang="en"
   ref="https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/death%20march">A
     march in which those unable to go on are left to die as they
     fall.</desc>
  <link type="ehri"
   target="https://portal.ehri-project.eu/keywords/ehri_terms-517?dlid=eng"/>
  <idno type="wikidata">Q5023193</idno>
 </item>
</list>
```

# 4. Encoding Template for the `<teiHeader>`

```
<teiHeader>
 <fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
   <title xml:lang="en"/>
   <title xml:lang=""/>
   <principal>
    <affiliation>
     <orgName ref="https://www.ehri-project.eu">European
           Holocaust Research Infrastructure</orgName>
    </affiliation>
   </principal>
   <respStmt>
    <resp/>
    <persName/>
   </respStmt>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
   <publisher>
    <ref target="https://www.ehri-project.eu">European Holocaust
         Research Infrastructure></ref>
   </publisher>
   <availability>
    <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0">Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International</licence>
   </availability>
  </publicationStmt>
  <seriesStmt>
   <title ref="{link to the online edition}"/>
  </seriesStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
   <msDesc>
    <msIdentifier>
     <institution>
      <orgName/>
      <address>
       <street>
        <num/>
       </street>
       <postCode/>
       <settlement/>
       <country/>
      </address>
     </institution>
     <collection/>
     <idno/>
    </msIdentifier>
    <physDesc>
     <p/>
    </physDesc>
   </msDesc>
   <bibl>
    <textLang/>
   </bibl>
  </sourceDesc>
 </fileDesc>
 <encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
   <p xml:lang="en"/>
  </projectDesc>
 </encodingDesc>
 <profileDesc>
  <creation>
   <origDate when=""/>
   <origPlace ref="{GeoNames link}"/>
   <persName ref="{EHRI entity}"/>
```

```
  </creation>
  <textClass>
   <catRef target="{}"/>
   <keywords>
    <term/>
   </keywords>
  </textClass>
  <langUsage>
   <language ident=""/>
  </langUsage>
  <abstract>
   <p xml:lang="en"/>
  </abstract>
 </profileDesc>
 <revisionDesc>
  <change when="" who="{}"/>
 </revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

# 5. Schema Specifications

## 5.1. Elements

### *5.1.1. <TEI>*

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2"><TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Module</td><td>textstructure</td></tr>
<tr><td>Attributes</td><td>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)<br>version — specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.<br>Status Optional<br>Datatype teidata.version<br>Note Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise association provided by the source attribute on the associated <schemaSpec>.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Contained by</td><td>textstructure: TEI</td></tr>
<tr><td>May contain</td><td>header: teiHeader<br>textstructure: TEI text</td></tr>
<tr><td>Note</td><td>This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 on it, for example: <TEI version="4.4.0" xml:lang="it" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Example</td><td>

```
<TEI version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
   <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
   </titleStmt>
   <publicationStmt>
    <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5
         version using a namespace.</p>
   </publicationStmt>
   <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
   </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
 </teiHeader>
 <text>
  <body>
```

</td></tr>
</table>

```
  <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
 </body>
</text>
</TEI>
```

**Example**

```
<TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
   <titleStmt>
    <title>A TEI Document containing four page images </title>
   </titleStmt>
   <publicationStmt>
    <p>Unpublished demonstration file.</p>
   </publicationStmt>
   <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
   </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
 </teiHeader>
 <facsimile>
  <graphic url="page1.png"/>
  <graphic url="page2.png"/>
  <graphic url="page3.png"/>
  <graphic url="page4.png"/>
 </facsimile>
</TEI>
```

**Schematron**

<sch:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> <sch:ns prefix="xs" uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/>

**Schematron**

<sch:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/> <sch:ns prefix="rna" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0"/>

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
  <alternate>
   <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.resource"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
   <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element TEI
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute version { text }?,
   ( teiHeader, ( ( model.resource+, TEI* ) | TEI+ ) )
}
```

### *5.1.2. <abbr>*

**<abbr>** (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]

**Module**: core

**Attributes**: att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (type, @subtype)

type — (type) allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

- **Derived from**: att.typed
- **Status**: Optional
- **Datatype**: teidata.enumerated
- **Sample values include:** **suspension** (suspension) the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | **contraction** (contraction) the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.<br>**brevigraph** the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.<br>**superscription** (superscription) the abbreviation includes writing above the line.<br>**acronym** (acronym) the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.<br>**title** (title) the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, …)<br>**organization** (organization) the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.<br>**geographic** (geographic) the abbreviation is for a geographic name. |
| | **Note** | The *type* attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see 6.2. |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.editorial | |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark | |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data | |
| **Note** | If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the `<editorialDecl>`, either with a `<normalization>` element or a <p>. | |
| **Example** | `<choice>`<br>`<expan>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expan>`<br>`<abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>` | |

| | |
|---|---|
| | <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr><br><abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr><br></choice> |
| **Example** | <choice><br><abbr>SPQR</abbr><br><expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan><br></choice> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element abbr<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.typed.attribute.subtype,<br>attribute type { text }?,<br>macro.phraseSeq<br>} |

### *5.1.3. <abstract>*

| **<abstract>** contains a summary or formal abstract prefixed to an existing source document by the encoder. [2.4.4. Abstracts] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** list p<br>**figures:** table<br>**namesdates:** listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace |
| **Note** | This element is intended only for cases where no abstract is available in the original source. Any abstract already present in the source document should be encoded as a  within the `<front>`, as it should for a born-digital document. |
| **Example** | <profileDesc><br><abstract resp="#LB"><br> Good database design involves the acquisition and deployment of skills which have a wider relevance to the educational process. From a set of more or less instinctive rules of thumb a formal discipline or "methodology" of database design has evolved. Applying that methodology can be of great benefit to a very wide range of academic subjects: it requires fundamental skills of abstraction and generalisation and it provides a simple mechanism whereby complex ideas and information structures can be represented and manipulated, even without the use of a computer. <br></abstract><br></profileDesc> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><classRef key="model.pLike"/><br><classRef key="model.listLike"/><br><elementRef key="listBibl"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element abstract<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>( model.pLike \| model.listLike \| listBibl )+<br>} |

### *5.1.4. <addrLine>*

| **<addrLine>** (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.6.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text. |
| **Example** | `<address>`<br>`<addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>`<br>`<addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>`<br>`<addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>`<br>`<addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>`<br>`</address>` |
| **Example** | `<addrLine>`<br>`<ref target="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</ref>`<br>`</addrLine>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element addrLine { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }` |

### *5.1.5. <address>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<address>** (address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.6.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal publicationStmt<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** addrLine lb name note pb postCode rs street<br>**header:** idno<br>**namesdates:** country forename location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space |
| **Note** | This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be represented as follows:<br>`<address>`<br>` <street>via Marsala 24</street>`<br>` <postCode>40126</postCode>`<br>` <name>Bologna</name>`<br>` <name>Italy</name>`<br>`</address>` |
| **Example** | When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements such as country or settlement would be preferable over generic <name>:<br>`<address>`<br>` <street>via Marsala 24</street>`<br>` <postCode>40126</postCode>`<br>` <settlement>Bologna</settlement>`<br>` <country>Italy</country>`<br>`</address>` |
| **Example** | `<address>`<br>` <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>`<br>` <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>`<br>` <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>`<br>` <addrLine>USA</addrLine>`<br>`</address>` |
| **Example** | `<address>`<br>` <country key="FR"/>`<br>` <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement>`<br>` <postCode>69002</postCode>`<br>` <district type="arrondissement">IIème</district>`<br>` <district type="quartier">Perrache</district>`<br>` <street>`<br>`  <num>30</num>, Cours de Verdun</street>`<br>`</address>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <sequence>`<br>`  <classRef key="model.global"`<br>`  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`  <sequence minOccurs="1"`<br>`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`<br>`  <classRef key="model.addrPart"/>`<br>`  <classRef key="model.global"`<br>`  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`  </sequence>`<br>` </sequence>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element address`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  ( model.global*, ( model.addrPart, model.global* )+ )`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.6. <affiliation>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<affiliation>** (affiliation) contains an informal description of a person's present or past affiliation with some organization, for example an employer or sponsor. [15.2.2. The Participant Description] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)<br>type — characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.<br>**Derived from** att.typed<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Sample values include:** **sponsor** **recommend** **discredit** **pledged** |
| **Member of** | model.addressLike model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | If included, the name of an organization may be tagged using either the <name> element as above, or the more specific <orgName> element. |
| **Example** | `<affiliation>Junior project officer for the US <name type="org">National Endowment for the Humanities</name></affiliation>` |
| **Example** | This example indicates that the person was affiliated with the Australian Journalists Association at some point between the dates listed.<br>`<affiliation notAfter="1960-01-01" notBefore="1957-02-28">Paid up member of the <orgName>Australian Journalists Association</orgName></affiliation>` |
| **Example** | This example indicates that the person was affiliated with Mount Holyoke College throughout the entire span of the date range listed.<br>`<affiliation from="1902-01-01" to="1906-01-01">Was an assistant professor at Mount Holyoke College.</affiliation>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/></content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element affiliation { att.global.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.naming.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute type { text }?, macro.phraseSeq }` |

### *5.1.7. <author>*

| |
|---|
| **<author>** (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement] |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **header:** titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.<br>In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.<br>Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given. |
| **Example** | `<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>`<br>`<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634–1693)</author>`<br>`<author>Anonymous</author>`<br>`<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author>`<br>`<author>`<br>`<persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and`<br>`<persName>John Fletcher</persName>`<br>`</author>`<br>`<author>`<br>`<orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network`<br>`</author>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element author`<br>`{`<br>`att.global.attributes,`<br>`att.naming.attributes,`<br>`att.datable.attributes,`<br>`macro.phraseSeq`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.8. <authority>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<authority>** (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.publicationStmtPart.agency |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Contained by** | **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<authority>John Smith</authority>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element authority`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  att.canonical.attributes,`<br>`  macro.phraseSeq.limited`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.9. <availability>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<availability>** (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)<br>status (status) supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **free** (free) the text is freely available.<br>**unknown** (unknown) the status of the text is unknown.<br>**restricted** (restricted) the text is not freely available. |
| **Member of** | model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** p<br>**header:** licence |
| **Note** | A consistent format should be adopted |
| **Example** | `<availability status="restricted">`<br>` <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>`<br>`</availability>`<br>`<availability status="free">`<br>` <p>In the public domain</p>`<br>`</availability>`<br>`<availability status="restricted">`<br>` <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>`<br>`</availability>` |
| **Example** | `<availability>`<br>` <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">`<br>`  <p>The MIT License`<br>`  applies to this document.</p>`<br>`  <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>`<br>`  <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy`<br>`  of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal` |

| | |
|---|---|
| | <pre>in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights<br>to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell<br>copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is<br>furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: <br> The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in<br>all copies or substantial portions of the Software. <br> THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR<br>IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,<br>FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE<br>AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER<br>LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,<br>OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN<br>THE SOFTWARE. <br></licence><br></availability></pre> |
| **Content model** | <pre><content><br><alternate minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/><br><classRef key="model.pLike"/><br></alternate><br></content></pre> |
| **Schema Declaration** | <pre>element availability<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.declarable.attributes,<br>attribute status { "free" \| "unknown" \| "restricted" }?,<br>( model.availabilityPart \| model.pLike )+<br>}</pre> |

### *5.1.10. <bibl>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<bibl>** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** del desc head hi item note p q ref textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** change licence sourceDesc<br>**namesdates:** event location occupation org person place<br>**textstructure:** div postscript salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** textLang<br>character data |
| **Note** | Contains *phrase-level* elements, together with any combination of elements from the model.biblPart class |
| **Example** | <pre><bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale,<br>1990)</bibl></pre> |
| **Example** | <pre><bibl><br><title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In<br><author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.<br><publisher>OUP</publisher><br><date>1968</date>.<br></bibl></pre> |
| **Example** | <pre><bibl type="article" subtype="book_chapter"<br>xml:id="carlin_2003"><br><author><br><name><br><surname>Carlin</surname><br>(<forename>Claire</forename>)</name><br></author>,<br><title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France’s last<br>congrès</title> dans<br><bibl type="monogr"><br><title level="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.</pre> |

```
    Tobin</title>, ed.
 <editor>
   <name>
    <forename>Claire</forename>
    <surname>Carlin</surname>
   </name>
  </editor> et
 <editor>
   <name>
    <forename>Kathleen</forename>
    <surname>Wine</surname>
   </name>
  </editor>,
 <pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</pubPlace>,
 <publisher>Rookwood Press</publisher>,
 <date when="2003">2003</date>.
 </bibl>
</bibl>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"
  preserveOrder="true">
  <textNode/>
  <elementRef key="textLang" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="1"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element bibl
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.docStatus.attributes,
   ( text, textLang )
}
```

### *5.1.11. <birth>*

| **<birth>** (birth) contains information about a person's birth, such as its date and place. [15.2.2. The Participant Description] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)<br>type — characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.<br>**Derived from:** att.typed<br>**Status:** Optional<br>**Datatype:** teidata.enumerated<br>**Sample values include:** **caesarean** (caesarean section)<br>**vaginal** (vaginal delivery)<br>**exNihilo** (ex nihilo) |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **in-**<br>**cor-**<br>**po-**<br>**rat-**<br>**ed**<br>**found-**<br>**ed**<br>**es-**<br>**tab-**<br>**lished** |
| **Member of** | model.personPart |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<birth>Before 1920, Midlands region.</birth>` |
| **Example** | `<birth when="1960-12-10">In a small cottage near <name type="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</name>, early in the morning of <date>10 Dec 1960</date></birth>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/></content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element birth { att.global.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, att.naming.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute type { text }?, macro.phraseSeq }` |

### *5.1.12. <body>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text |
| **May contain** | **textstructure:** div |
| **Example** | `<body> <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l> <l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l> <l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l> <l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l> <l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l> <l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l> <l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l> <l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l> <l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l> <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer></body>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| | <elementRef key="div" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element body { att.global.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, div+ } |

### *5.1.13. <byline>*

| **<byline>** (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.5. Front Matter] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list<br>**figures:** table<br>**textstructure:** div opener |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element. |
| **Example** | <byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the<br>while in London. Never made publick before.</byline> |
| **Example** | <byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline> |
| **Example** | <byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline> |
| **Example** | <byline>BY<br><docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor><br>Master of Arts,<br>(Somtimes)<br>Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><textNode/><br><classRef key="model.gLike"/><br><classRef key="model.phrase"/><br><elementRef key="docAuthor"/><br><classRef key="model.global"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element byline<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>( text \| model.gLike \| model.phrase \| docAuthor \| model.global )*<br>} |

### *5.1.14. <catRef>*

| **<catRef>** (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [2.4.3. The Text Classification] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (target, @targetLang, @evaluate) |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | target | specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References | |
| | | **Derived from** | att.pointing |
| | | **Status** | Required |
| | | **Datatype** | 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space |
| | | **Suggested values include:** | **smuggling**<br>**fate**<br>**refugee_policy**<br>**reports** |
| | scheme | identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a `<taxonomy>` element, or by some other resource. | |
| | | **Status** | Optional |
| | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer |
| **Contained by** | **header:** textClass | | |
| **May contain** | Empty element | | |
| **Note** | The *scheme* attribute needs to be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared. | | |
| **Example** | | | |

```
<catRef scheme="#myTopics"
 target="#news #prov #sales2"/>
<!-- elsewhere -->
<taxonomy xml:id="myTopics">
 <category xml:id="news">
  <catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc>
 </category>
 <category xml:id="prov">
  <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
 </category>
 <category xml:id="sales2">
  <catDesc>Low to average annual sales</catDesc>
 </category>
</taxonomy>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <empty/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element catRef
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.pointing.attribute.targetLang,
   att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
   attribute target
   {
      list { ( "smuggling" | "fate" | "refugee_policy" | "reports" )+ }
   },
   attribute scheme { text }?,
   empty
}
```

### *5.1.15. <cell>*

| **<cell>** (cell) contains one cell of a table. [14.1.1. TEI Tables] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | figures |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols) |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Contained by** | **figures:** row |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num p pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<row>`<br>` <cell role="label">General conduct</cell>`<br>` <cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality`<br>`  and inattention to duties</cell>`<br>`</row>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element cell`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  att.tableDecoration.attributes,`<br>`  macro.specialPara`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.16. <change>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<change>** (change) documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.4.1. Creation 11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.ascribed (@who) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.docStatus (@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)<br>target (target) points to one or more elements that belong to this change.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space |
| **Contained by** | **header:** listChange revisionDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num p pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | The *who* attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it.<br>It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The *status* attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented. |
| **Example** | `<titleStmt>`<br>` <title> ... </title>` |

```
 <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
 <respStmt xml:id="BZ">
  <resp>copy editing</resp>
  <name>Brett Zamir</name>
 </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<!-- ... -->
<revisionDesc status="published">
 <change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02"
  status="public">Finished chapter 23</change>
 <change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02"
  status="draft">Finished chapter 2</change>
 <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21"
  who="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</change>
 <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>
```

**Example**

```
<profileDesc>
 <creation>
  <listChange>
   <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change>
   <change xml:id="DRAFT2"
    notBefore="1880-12-09">First revision, mostly
       using green ink</change>
   <change xml:id="DRAFT3"
    notBefore="1881-02-13">Final corrections as
       supplied to printer.</change>
  </listChange>
 </creation>
</profileDesc>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element change
{
   att.ascribed.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.docStatus.attributes,
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute target { list { + } }?,
   macro.specialPara
}
```

### *5.1.17. <closer>*

**<closer>** (closer) groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divBottomPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list<br>**figures:** table<br>**textstructure:** div postscript |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**textstructure:** dateline salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<div type="letter">`<br>` <p> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>`<br>` <closer>`<br>`  <salute>I remain, &amp;c. &amp;c.</salute>`<br>`  <signed>H. Colburn</signed>`<br>` </closer>`<br>`</div>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | <br> <br><!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes. <br> <closer><br> <dateline><br> <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name><br> <date>1914–1921</date><br> </dateline><br> </closer><br> |
| **Content model** | <content><br> <alternate minOccurs="0"<br> maxOccurs="unbounded"><br> <textNode/><br> <classRef key="model.gLike"/><br> <elementRef key="signed"/><br> <elementRef key="dateline"/><br> <elementRef key="salute"/><br> <classRef key="model.phrase"/><br> <classRef key="model.global"/><br> </alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element closer<br>{<br> att.global.attributes,<br> att.written.attributes,<br> (<br> text<br> \| model.gLike<br> \| signed<br> \| dateline<br> \| salute<br> \| model.phrase<br> \| model.global<br> )*<br>} |

### *5.1.18. <collection>*

| | |
|---|---|
| <**collection**> (collection) contains the name of a collection of manuscripts or other objects, not necessarily located within a single repository. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msIdentifier |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | <msIdentifier><br> <country>USA</country><br> <region>California</region><br> <settlement>San Marino</settlement><br> <repository>Huntington Library</repository><br> <collection>Ellesmere</collection><br> <idno>El 26 C 9</idno><br> <msName>The Ellesmere Chaucer</msName><br></msIdentifier> |
| **Content model** | <content><br> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element collection<br>{<br> att.global.attributes,<br> att.naming.attributes, |

```
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq.limited
}
```

### *5.1.19. <country>*

| **<country>** (country) contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [13.2.3. Place Names] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution msIdentifier origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166. |
| **Example** | `<country key="DK">Denmark</country>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element country`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  att.naming.attributes,`<br>`  att.typed.attributes,`<br>`  att.datable.attributes,`<br>`  macro.phraseSeq`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.20. <creation>*

| **<creation>** (creation) contains information about the creation of a text. [2.4.1. Creation 2.4. The Profile Description] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date distinct foreign hi name num q ref rs term title<br>**header:** idno listChange<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>character data |
| **Note** | The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest.<br>It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the <listChange> element. It should not be confused with the <publicationStmt> element, which records date and place of publication. |
| **Example** | `<creation>`<br>`<date>Before 1987</date>`<br>`</creation>` |
| **Example** | `<creation>`<br>`<date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>`<br>`</creation>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<alternate minOccurs="0"`<br>`maxOccurs="unbounded">`<br>`<textNode/>`<br>`<classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>`<br>`<elementRef key="listChange"/>`<br>`</alternate>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element creation`<br>`{`<br>`att.global.attributes,`<br>`att.datable.attributes,`<br>`( text \| model.limitedPhrase \| listChange )*`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.21. <date>*

**<date>** (date) contains a date in any format. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 15.2.3. The Setting Description 13.4. Dates]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal publicationStmt<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>` |
| **Example** | `Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>` |
| **Example** | `<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element date { att.global.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, att.typed.attributes, ( text \| model.gLike \| model.phrase \| model.global )* }` |

### *5.1.22. <dateline>*

| | |
|---|---|
| <**dateline**> (dateline) contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list<br>**figures:** table<br>**textstructure:** closer div opener |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>` |
| **Example** | `<div type="chapter"> <p> <!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p> <closer> <dateline> <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name> <date>1914–1921</date> </dateline> </closer> </div>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">` |

```
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <elementRef key="docDate"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element dateline
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global | docDate )*
}
```

### *5.1.23. <death>*

**<death>** (death) contains information about a person's death, such as its date and place. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype) |

type — characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Derived from** | att.typed |
| **Status** | Optional |
| **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated |
| **Sample values include:** | **proclaimed**<br>**assumed**<br>**verified**<br>**clinical**<br>**brain**<br>**natural**<br>**unnatural**<br>**fragmentation** |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **dis-**<br>**so-**<br>**lu-**<br>**tion**<br>**Note** This attribute is not intended to express the cause of death. |
| **Member of** | model.personPart |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<death when="1902-10-01"/>` |
| **Example** | `<death when="1960-12-10">Passed away near <name type="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</name>, after suffering from cereb` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element death`<br>`{`<br>`  att.datable.attributes,`<br>`  att.dimensions.attributes,`<br>`  att.editLike.attributes,`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  att.naming.attributes,`<br>`  att.typed.attribute.subtype,`<br>`  attribute type { text }?,`<br>`  macro.phraseSeq`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.24. <del>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<del>** (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)) (att.written (@hand)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)<br>rend (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.<br>**Derived from** att.global.rendition<br>**Status** Required<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace<br>**Suggested values include:** **overwritten**<br>**strikethrough**<br>**erased**<br>**none** |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Member of** | model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** change licence<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The `<delSpan>` element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.<br>The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a `<supplied>` tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the `<gap>` tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the `<gap>` element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the <unclear> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.<br>Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the `<certainty>` element (see 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility).<br>There is a clear distinction in the TEI between <del> and `<surplus>` on the one hand and `<gap>` or <unclear> on the other. <del> indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. `<surplus>` indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. `<gap>` or <unclear>, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription. |
| **Example** | `<l>`<br>` <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>`<br>` weht der Wind`<br>`</l>` |
| **Example** | `<del rend="overstrike">`<br>` <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5"`<br>`  unit="character"/>`<br>`</del>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element del`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attribute.xmlid,`<br>`  att.global.attribute.n,`<br>`  att.global.attribute.xmllang,`<br>`  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,`<br>`  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,`<br>`  att.global.rendition.attribute.style,`<br>`  att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,`<br>`  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,`<br>`  att.global.change.attribute.change,`<br>`  att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,` |

```
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.global.source.attribute.source,
   att.transcriptional.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.dimensions.attributes,
   attribute rend
   {
      list { ( "overwritten" | "strikethrough" | "erased" | "none" )+ }
   },
   macro.paraContent
}
```

### *5.1.25. <desc>*

**<desc>** (description) contains a short description of the purpose, function, or use of its parent element, or when the parent is a documentation element, describes or defines the object being documented. [22.4.1. Description of Components]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (type, @subtype) |

type — characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

**Derived from:** att.typed

**Status:** Optional

**Datatype:** teidata.enumerated

**Suggested values include:**

**deprecationInfo** (deprecation information) This element describes why or how its parent element is being deprecated, typically including recommendations for alternate encoding.

```
<dataSpec module="tei"
 ident="teidata.point"
 validUntil="2050-02-25">
 <desc type="deprecationInfo"
  versionDate="2018-09-14"
  xml:lang="en">Several standards bodies, including NIST in the USA,
   strongly recommend against ending the representation of a number
   with a decimal point. So instead of <q>3.</q> use either <q>3</q>
   or <q>3.0</q>.</desc>
<!-- ... -->
</dataSpec>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Member of** | model.descLike model.labelLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** del desc head hi item list note p q ref textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** change licence listChange<br>**namesdates:** event listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location occupation org place<br>**textstructure:** div postscript salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark space |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date desc distinct foreign hi label list name num q ref rs term title<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>character data |
| **Note** | When used in a specification element such as `<elementSpec>`, TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, begining with an active verb. |
| **Example** | Example of a <desc> element inside a documentation element. |

```
<dataSpec module="tei"
 ident="teidata.point">
 <desc versionDate="2010-10-17"
  xml:lang="en">defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.</desc>
```

```
 <content>
  <dataRef name="token"
   restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)"/>
 </content>
<!-- ... -->
</dataSpec>
```

**Example**

Example of a <desc> element in a non-documentation element.

```
<place xml:id="KERG2">
 <placeName>Kerguelen Islands</placeName>
<!-- ... -->
 <terrain>
  <desc>antarctic tundra</desc>
 </terrain>
<!-- ... -->
</place>
```

**Schematron**

A <desc> with a *type* of deprecationInfo should only occur when its parent element is being deprecated. Furthermore, it should always occur in an element that is being deprecated when <desc> is a valid child of that element.
<sch:rule context="tei:desc[ @type eq 'deprecationInfo']"> <sch:assert test="../@validUntil">Information about a deprecation should only be present in a specification element that is being deprecated: that is, only an element that has a @validUntil attribute should have a child <desc type="deprecationInfo">.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element desc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { "deprecationInfo" }?,
   macro.limitedContent
}
```

### *5.1.26. <distinct>*

**<distinct>** identifies any word or phrase which is regarded as linguistically distinct, for example as archaic, technical, dialectal, non-preferred, etc., or as forming part of a sublanguage. [3.3.2.3. Other Linguistically Distinct Material]

**Module**: core

**Attributes**

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (type, @subtype)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| type | specifies the sublanguage or register to which the word or phrase is being assigned | |
| | **Derived from** | att.typed |
| | **Status** | Required |
| | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated |
| time | specifies how the phrase is distinct diachronically | |
| | **Status** | Optional |
| | **Datatype** | teidata.text |
| space | specifies how the phrase is distinct diatopically | |
| | **Status** | Optional |
| | **Datatype** | teidata.text |
| social | specifies how the phrase is distinct diastratically | |
| | **Status** | Optional |
| | **Datatype** | teidata.text |

**Member of**: model.emphLike

| | |
|---|---|
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `Next morning a boy in that dormitory confided to his bosom friend, a <distinct type="ps_slang">fag</distinct> of Macrea's, that there was trouble in their midst which King <distinct type="archaic">would fain</distinct> keep secret.` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element distinct { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute type { text }, attribute time { text }?, attribute space { text }?, attribute social { text }?, macro.phraseSeq }` |

### *5.1.27. *

| | |
|---|---|
| ** ** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1. Divisions of the Body] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.declaring (@decls) att.written (@hand) att.typed (type, @subtype)<br>type — characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.<br>**Derived from:** att.typed<br>**Status:** Required<br>**Datatype:** teidata.enumerated<br>**Suggested values include:** **transcription**; **translation** |
| **Member of** | model.divLike |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** body div |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl desc head label lb list note p pb q |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **figures:** table<br>**msdescription:** msDesc<br>**namesdates:** listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline div opener postscript salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark space |
| **Example** | <body><br> <br><head>Fallacies of Authority</head><br> The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress all exercise of the reasoning faculty. <br> <br><head>The Nature of Authority</head><br> With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest happiness of the greatest number [...] <br> <br><head>Analysis of Authority</head><br> What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be attached to authority [...] <br> <br> <br><head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head><br> Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...] <br> <br> <br> <br></body> |
| **Schematron** | <s:rule context="tei:TEI/text/body/div[@type]"> <s:assert test="@type='transcription' or @type='translation'"> Value for @type in first-level division is either "transcription" or "translation" </s:assert> </s:rule> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, unless div is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:report> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, unless div is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:report> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><classRef key="model.divTop"/><br><classRef key="model.global"/><br></alternate><br><sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"><br><alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><sequence minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><classRef key="model.divLike"/><br><classRef key="model.divGenLike"/><br></alternate><br><classRef key="model.global"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><sequence minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><alternate minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="1"><br><elementRef key="schemaSpec"/><br><classRef key="model.common"/><br></alternate><br><classRef key="model.global"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br><sequence minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><alternate minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="1"><br><classRef key="model.divLike"/><br><classRef key="model.divGenLike"/><br></alternate><br><classRef key="model.global"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br></sequence><br></alternate><br><sequence minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"> |

| | |
|---|---|
| | <classRef key="model.divBottom"/><br><classRef key="model.global"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br></sequence><br></sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element div<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.divLike.attributes,<br>att.typed.attribute.subtype,<br>att.declaring.attributes,<br>att.written.attributes,<br>attribute type { "transcription" \| "translation" },<br>(<br>( model.divTop \| model.global )*,<br>(<br>(<br>( ( model.divLike \| model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+<br>\| (<br>( ( schemaSpec \| model.common ), model.global* )+,<br>( ( model.divLike \| model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*<br>)<br>),<br>( model.divBottom, model.global* )*<br>)?<br>)<br>} |

### *5.1.28. <encodingDesc>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<encodingDesc>** (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.teiHeaderPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **core:** p<br>**header:** projectDesc |
| **Example** | <encodingDesc><br> Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All<br>hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No<br>formatting or layout information preserved. <br></encodingDesc> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/><br><classRef key="model.pLike"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element encodingDesc<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>( model.encodingDescPart \| model.pLike )+<br>} |

### *5.1.29. <event>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<event>** (event) contains data relating to any kind of significant event associated with a person, place, or organization. [13.3.1. Basic Principles] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (at- |

| | |
|---|---|
| | t.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.locatable (@where) |
| **Member of** | model.eventLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** event listEvent org person place |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl desc head label note p<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc<br>**namesdates:** event |
| **Example** | <person><br><event type="mat" when="1972-10-12"><br><label>matriculation</label><br></event><br><event type="grad" when="1975-06-23"><br><label>graduation</label><br></event><br></person> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><sequence><br><elementRef key="idno" minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><classRef key="model.headLike"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><alternate><br><classRef key="model.pLike"<br>minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><classRef key="model.labelLike"<br>minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></alternate><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><classRef key="model.noteLike"/><br><classRef key="model.biblLike"/><br><elementRef key="linkGrp"/><br><elementRef key="link"/><br><elementRef key="idno"/><br><elementRef key="ptr"/><br></alternate><br><elementRef key="event" minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element event<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.datable.attributes,<br>att.editLike.attributes,<br>att.typed.attributes,<br>att.naming.attributes,<br>att.sortable.attributes,<br>att.locatable.attributes,<br>(<br>idno*,<br>model.headLike*,<br>( model.pLike+ \| model.labelLike+ ),<br>( model.noteLike \| model.biblLike \| linkGrp \| link \| idno \| ptr )*,<br>event*<br>)<br>} |

## *5.1.30. <fileDesc>*

| **<fileDesc>** (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |

| | |
|---|---|
| **May contain** | **header:** publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt |
| **Note** | The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived. |
| **Example** | <fileDesc><br><titleStmt><br><title>The shortest possible TEI document</title><br></titleStmt><br><publicationStmt><br> Distributed as part of TEI P5 <br></publicationStmt><br><sourceDesc><br> No print source exists: this is an original digital text <br></sourceDesc><br></fileDesc> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><sequence><br><sequence><br><elementRef key="titleStmt"/><br><elementRef key="editionStmt"<br>minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="publicationStmt"/><br><elementRef key="seriesStmt"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><elementRef key="notesStmt"<br>minOccurs="0"/><br></sequence><br><elementRef key="sourceDesc"<br>minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fileDesc<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>(<br>(<br>titleStmt,<br>editionStmt?,<br>extent?,<br>publicationStmt,<br>seriesStmt*,<br>notesStmt?<br>),<br>sourceDesc+<br>)<br>} |

## *5.1.31. <foreign>*

**<foreign>** (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (xml:lang, @xml:id, @n, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)<br>xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a 'tag' generated according to BCP 47.<br>**Derived from** att.global<br>**Status** Required<br>**Datatype** teidata.language<br>**Suggested values include:** **cs** Czech<br>**da** Danish |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **de**<br>German<br>**el**<br>Modern Greek<br>**en**<br>English<br>**es**<br>Spanish<br>**fr**<br>French<br>**he**<br>Hebrew<br>**hu**<br>Hungarian<br>**it**<br>Italian<br>**ja**<br>Japanese<br>**nl**<br>Dutch<br>**pl**<br>Polish<br>**ru**<br>Russian<br>**sk**<br>Slovak<br>**uk**<br>Ukrainian<br>**yi**<br>Yiddish |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | The global *xml:lang* attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1. Language Identification.<br>This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global *xml:lang* attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages. |
| **Example** | `This is heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis philosophicus</foreign>?` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element foreign { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, attribute xml:lang { "cs" \| "da" \| "de" \| "el" \| "en" \| "es" \| "fr" \| "he" \| "hu" \| "it" \| "ja" \| "nl" \| "pl" \| "ru" \| "sk" \| "uk" \| "yi" }, macro.phraseSeq }` |

### *5.1.32. <forename>*

| **<forename>** (forename) contains a forename, given or baptismal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | <persName><br> <roleName>Ex-President</roleName><br> <forename>George</forename><br> <surname>Bush</surname><br></persName> |
| **Content model** | <content><br> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element forename<br>{<br> att.global.attributes,<br> att.personal.attributes,<br> att.typed.attributes,<br> macro.phraseSeq<br>} |

### *5.1.33. <geo>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<geo>** (geographical coordinates) contains any expression of a set of geographic coordinates, representing a point, line, or area on the surface of the earth in some notation. [13.3.4.1. Varieties of Location] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Member of** | model.measureLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | Uses of <geo> can be associated with a coordinate system, defined by a <geoDecl> element supplied in the TEI header, using the *decls* attribute. If no such link is made, the assumption is that the content of each <geo> element will be a pair of numbers separated by whitespace, to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System. |
| **Example** | <geoDecl xml:id="WGS" datum="WGS84">World Geodetic System</geoDecl><br><geoDecl xml:id="OS" datum="OSGB36">Ordnance Survey</geoDecl><br><!-- ... --><br><location><br> <desc>A tombstone plus six lines of<br> Anglo-Saxon text, built into the west tower (on the south side<br> of the archway, at 8 ft. above the ground) of the<br> Church of St. Mary-le-Wigford in Lincoln.</desc><br> <geo decls="#WGS">53.226658 -0.541254</geo><br> <geo decls="#OS">SK 97481 70947</geo><br></location> |
| **Example** | <geo>41.687142 -74.870109</geo> |
| **Content model** | <content><br> <textNode/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element geo { att.global.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, text } |

### *5.1.34. <head>*

| **<head>** (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.headLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list<br>**figures:** table<br>**msdescription:** msDesc<br>**namesdates:** event listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace org place<br>**textstructure:** div postscript |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a `<div1>` is the title of that chapter or section. |
| **Example** | The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a `<trailer>`, as in this example:<br>`<div1 n="I" type="book">`<br>` <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of`<br>`  Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>`<br>` <div2 type="section">`<br>`  <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>`<br>`  <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>`<br>`  <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve`<br>`  years passed.</p>`<br>`  <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six`<br>`  years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.</trailer>`<br>` </div2>`<br>`</div1>` |
| **Example** | When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. the heading "Secunda conclusio") they might however be encoded as if. The actual placement in the source document can be captured with the *place* attribute.<br>`<div type="subsection">`<br>` <head place="margin">Secunda conclusio</head>`<br>` <p>`<br>`  <lb n="1251"/>`<br>`  <hi rend="large">Potencia: habitus: et actus: recipiunt speciem ab obiectis<supplied>.</supplied>`<br>`  </hi>`<br>`  <lb n="1252"/>Probatur sic. Omne importans necessariam habitudinem ad proprium`<br>`  [...]`<br>` </p>`<br>`</div>` |
| **Example** | The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:<br>`With a few exceptions, connectives are equally`<br>` useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument. <list rend="bulleted">`<br>` <head>Connectives</head>`<br>` <item>above</item>`<br>` <item>accordingly</item>`<br>` <item>across from</item>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| | <item>adjacent to</item><br><item>again</item><br><item><br><!-- ... --><br></item><br></list> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><textNode/><br><elementRef key="lg"/><br><classRef key="model.gLike"/><br><classRef key="model.phrase"/><br><classRef key="model.inter"/><br><classRef key="model.lLike"/><br><classRef key="model.global"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element head<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.typed.attributes,<br>att.placement.attributes,<br>att.written.attributes,<br>(<br>text<br>\| lg<br>\| model.gLike<br>\| model.phrase<br>\| model.inter<br>\| model.lLike<br>\| model.global<br>)*<br>} |

### *5.1.35. <hi>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<hi>** (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.hiLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | <hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi><br>that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,<br>in consideration of the said intended marriage ... |
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> |

| | |
|---|---|
| | `</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element hi { att.global.attributes, att.written.attributes, macro.paraContent }` |

### *5.1.36. <idno>*

**<idno>** (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [13.3.1. Basic Principles 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (type, @subtype) |

type — categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.

**Derived from:** att.typed

**Status:** Optional

**Datatype:** teidata.enumerated

**Suggested values include:**

**ISBN**
International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a published book or similar item, registered with the International ISBN Agency.

**ISSN**
International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication.

**DOI**
Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document.

**URI**
Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource, following the syntax of RFC 3986.

**VIAF**
A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity.

**ESTC**
English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801.

**OCLC**
OCLC control number (record number) for the union catalog record in WorldCat, a union catalog for member libraries in the Online Computer Library Center global cooperative.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Member of** | model.nameLike model.personPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation idno language licence principal publicationStmt seriesStmt<br>**msdescription:** collection institution msIdentifier origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death event forename nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName person place placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **header:** idno<br>character data |
| **Note** | <idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for *type* on <idno> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI. |
| **Example** | <idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno><br><idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno><br><idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</idno><br><idno type="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</idno><br><idno type="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</idno><br><idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno><br><idno type="Wing">C695</idno><br><idno type="oldCat"><br><g ref="#sym"/>345<br></idno><br>In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym. |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><textNode/><br><classRef key="model.gLike"/><br><elementRef key="idno"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element idno<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.sortable.attributes,<br>att.datable.attributes,<br>att.typed.attribute.subtype,<br>attribute type<br>{<br>"ISBN" \| "ISSN" \| "DOI" \| "URI" \| "VIAF" \| "ESTC" \| "OCLC"<br>}?,<br>( text \| model.gLike \| idno )*<br>} |

## *5.1.37. <institution>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<institution>** (institution) contains the name of an organization such as a university or library, with which a manuscript or other object is identified, generally its holding institution. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msIdentifier |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space |

| | |
|---|---|
| | character data |
| **Example** | <msIdentifier><br><settlement>Oxford</settlement><br><institution>University of Oxford</institution><br><repository>Bodleian Library</repository><br><idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno><br></msIdentifier> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element institution<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.naming.attributes,<br>macro.phraseSeq.limited<br>} |

### *5.1.38. <item>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<item>** (item) contains one component of a list. [3.8. Lists 2.6. The Revision Description] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num p pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.<br>Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *n* attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not *n*. |
| **Example** | <list rend="numbered"><br><head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head><br><item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item><br><item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</item><br><item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item><br><item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item><br><item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item><br><item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item><br><item> ...</item><br></list> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element item<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.sortable.attributes,<br>macro.specialPara<br>} |

### *5.1.39. <keywords>*

| |
|---|
| **<keywords>** (keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3. The Text Classification] |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))<br>scheme — identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined, for example by a `<taxonomy>` element, or by some other resource.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.pointer |
| **Contained by** | **header:** textClass |
| **May contain** | **core:** term |
| **Note** | Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within an <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated.<br>If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the *scheme* attribute. |
| **Example** | `<keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net">`<br>` <term>Babbage, Charles</term>`<br>` <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term>`<br>`</keywords>` |
| **Example** | `<keywords>`<br>` <term>Fermented beverages</term>`<br>` <term>Central Andes</term>`<br>` <term>Schinus molle</term>`<br>` <term>Molle beer</term>`<br>` <term>Indigenous peoples</term>`<br>` <term>Ethnography</term>`<br>` <term>Archaeology</term>`<br>`</keywords>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">`<br>`  <elementRef key="term" minOccurs="1"`<br>`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>` </sequence>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element keywords`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  attribute scheme { text }?,`<br>`  ( term+ )`<br>`}` |

## *5.1.40. <label>*

**<label>** (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.8. Lists]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.labelLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** del desc head hi item list note p q ref textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** change licence<br>**namesdates:** event location occupation org place<br>**textstructure:** div postscript salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global *xml:lang* attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:<br>`<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">`<br>` <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>`<br>` <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>`<br>` <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>`<br>` <label>nu</label>`<br>` <item xml:lang="en">now</item>`<br>` <label>lhude</label>`<br>` <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>`<br>` <label>bloweth</label>`<br>` <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>`<br>` <label>med</label>`<br>` <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>`<br>` <label>wude</label>`<br>` <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>`<br>` <label>awe</label>`<br>` <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>`<br>` <label>lhouth</label>`<br>` <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>`<br>` <label>sterteth</label>`<br>` <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>`<br>`  <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>`<br>`  <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>`<br>`  </cit>`<br>` </item>`<br>` <label>verteth</label>`<br>` <item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>`<br>` <label>murie</label>`<br>` <item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>`<br>` <label>swik</label>`<br>` <item xml:lang="en">cease</item>`<br>` <label>naver</label>`<br>` <item xml:lang="en">never</item>`<br>`</list>` |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the *n* attribute on the <item> element:<br>`I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred`<br>` in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos. <list rend="runon" type="ordered">`<br>` <label>(1)</label>`<br>` <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to the press.</item>`<br>` <label>(2) </label>`<br>` <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the author and the`<br>`  printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>`<br>`</list>` |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:<br>`<list type="gloss">`<br>` <label>March 1757.</label>`<br>` <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>`<br>` <label>March 8th.</label>`<br>` <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>`<br>` <label>June.</label>`<br>` <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod — <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedamus`<br>`  amori.</quote>`<br>` </item>`<br>` <label>August.</label>`<br>` <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>`<br>`</list>`<br>Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice. |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the <label> element appears *within* the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.<br>`<p>[...]`<br>`<lb/>&amp; n’entrer en mauuais &amp; mal-heu-`<br>`<lb/>ré me#nage. Or des que le con#ente-` |

| | |
|---|---|
| | <lb/>ment des parties y e#t le mariage e#t<br><lb/> arre#té, quoy que de faict il ne #oit<br><label place="margin">Pui##ance maritale<br>entre les Romains.</label><br><lb/> con#ommé. Depuis la con#omma-<br><lb/>tion du mariage la femme e#t #oubs<br><lb/> la pui##ance du mary, s'il n'e#t e#cla-<br><lb/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce<br><lb/> cas, la femme, qui a e#pou#é vn en-<br><lb/>fant de famille, e#t #ous la pui##ance<br>[...]</p><br>In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the *type* attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label. |
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element label<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.typed.attributes,<br>att.placement.attributes,<br>att.written.attributes,<br>macro.phraseSeq<br>} |

### *5.1.41. <langUsage>*

| **<langUsage>** (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p<br>**header:** language |
| **Example** | <langUsage><br><language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québecois</language><br><language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language><br><language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language><br></langUsage> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate><br><classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><elementRef key="language" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element langUsage<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.declarable.attributes,<br>( model.pLike+ \| language+ )<br>} |

### *5.1.42. <language>*

| **<language>** (language) characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))<br>ident (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in BCP 47 which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global *xml:lang* attribute.<br>**Status** Required<br>**Datatype** teidata.language<br>usage specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** nonNegativeInteger |
| **Contained by** | **header:** langUsage |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element. |
| **Example** | `<langUsage>`<br>` <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>`<br>` <language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</language>`<br>` <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>`<br>`</langUsage>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element language`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  attribute ident { text },`<br>`  attribute usage { text }?,`<br>`  macro.phraseSeq.limited`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.43. <lb>*

**<lb>** (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del distinct foreign head hi item label list name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell table<br>**header:** authority change language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName person placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline div opener postscript salute signed text<br>**transcr:** metamark |

| | |
|---|---|
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The *n* attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.<br>The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives. |
| **Example** | This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:<br>`<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>`<br>`<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>`<br>`<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>` |
| **Example** | This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The *break* attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.<br>`<titlePart>`<br>`<lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="no"/>ver before Printed.`<br>`</titlePart>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<empty/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element lb`<br>`{`<br>`att.global.attributes,`<br>`att.typed.attributes,`<br>`att.edition.attributes,`<br>`att.spanning.attributes,`<br>`att.breaking.attributes,`<br>`empty`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.44. <licence>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<licence>** contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.availabilityPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** availability |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num p pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The *target* attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *when*, *notBefore*, *notAfter*, *from* or *to* attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence. |
| **Example** | `<licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"> Licence: Creative Commons At</licence>` |
| **Example** | `<availability> <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/" notBefore="2013-01-01"> <p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence applies to this document.</p> <p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p> </licence> </availability>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element licence { att.global.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, att.datable.attributes, macro.specialPara }` |

### *5.1.45. <list>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<list>** (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.8. Lists] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (type, @subtype)<br>type (type) describes the nature of the items in the list.<br>**Derived from:** att.typed<br>**Status:** Optional<br>**Datatype:** teidata.enumerated<br>**Suggested values include:**<br>**gloss** (gloss) each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a <label> element preceding the list item.<br>**index** (index) each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.<br>**instructions** (instructions) each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.<br>**litany** (litany) each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.<br>**syllogism** (syllogism) each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.<br>**Note:** Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of *type* on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the *rend* or *style* attributes for these aspects of a list, while using *type* for |

| | |
|---|---|
| | the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.<br>The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error. |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** del desc head hi item note p q ref textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** abstract change licence revisionDesc<br>**namesdates:** occupation<br>**textstructure:** div postscript salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc head item label lb note pb<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener postscript salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark space |
| **Note** | May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings. |
| **Example** | `<list rend="numbered">`<br>` <item>a butcher</item>`<br>` <item>a baker</item>`<br>` <item>a candlestick maker, with`<br>` <list rend="bulleted">`<br>`  <item>rings on his fingers</item>`<br>`  <item>bells on his toes</item>`<br>` </list>`<br>` </item>`<br>`</list>` |
| **Example** | `<list type="syllogism" rend="bulleted">`<br>` <item>All Cretans are liars.</item>`<br>` <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</item>`<br>` <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</item>`<br>`</list>` |
| **Example** | `<list type="litany" rend="simple">`<br>` <item>God save us from drought.</item>`<br>` <item>God save us from pestilence.</item>`<br>` <item>God save us from wickedness in high places.</item>`<br>` <item>Praise be to God.</item>`<br>`</list>` |
| **Example** | The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):<br>`<div1 type="section">`<br>` <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>`<br>` <list rend="numbered">`<br>`  <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is caught with the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over eightpence.`<br>`  <list rend="numbered">`<br>`  <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account – or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>`<br>`  <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to escape, he is not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>`<br>`  <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and he may then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety for him that he will desist for ever.</item>`<br>`  <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild, or to bring him back there.</item>`<br>`  <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild, whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</item>`<br>`  </list>`<br>`  </item>`<br>`  <item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless men, from whom no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back such a person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.`<br>`  <list rend="numbered">`<br>`  <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed day, he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to strike him down as a thief.</item>`<br>`  <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his wergild or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>`<br>`  </list>`<br>`  </item>`<br>`  <item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and upholds his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and |

```
    120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands justice as
    often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he had
    refused him justice.
 <list rend="numbered">
   <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it becomes
        known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on the first
        occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.</item>
   <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been
        an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the same.</item>
  </list>
 </item>
 <item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning treachery to
    a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is
    afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
</list>
</div1>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

**Example**

```
<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they
 confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards
 inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy
 Cross.
<list rend="simple">
  <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have
     subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign of the Holy
     Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have subscribed with
     the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed with the
     sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed with the
     sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with thef sign of
     the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout will.</item>
  <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
  <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the Holy
     Cross.</item>
 </list>
</p>
```

**Schematron**

<sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']"> <sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="item"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
   <sequence>
    <elementRef key="headLabel"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="headItem"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <elementRef key="label"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     <elementRef key="item"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
```

```
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element list
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type
   {
      "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "litany" | "syllogism"
   }?,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global | desc* )*,
      (
         ( item, model.global* )+
       | (
            headLabel?,
            headItem?,
            ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+
         )
      ),
      ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
   )
}
```

## *5.1.46. <listChange>*

**<listChange>** groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text. [2.6. The Revision Description 11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (@type, @subtype)<br>ordered — indicates whether the ordering of its child <change> elements is to be considered significant or not<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.truthValue<br>**Default** true |
| **Contained by** | **header:** creation listChange revisionDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc<br>**header:** change listChange |
| **Note** | When this element appears within the <creation> element it documents the set of revision campaigns or stages identified during the evolution of the original text. When it appears within the <revisionDesc> element, it documents only changes made during the evolution of the encoded representation of that text. |
| **Example** | `<revisionDesc>`<br>` <listChange>`<br>`  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>`<br>`  <change when="1991-11-02" who="#MSM"> completed first draft </change>`<br>` </listChange>`<br>`</revisionDesc>` |
| **Example** | `<profileDesc>`<br>` <creation>`<br>`  <listChange ordered="true">`<br>`  <change xml:id="CHG-1">First stage, written in ink by a writer</change>`<br>`  <change xml:id="CHG-2">Second stage, written in Goethe's hand using pencil</change>`<br>`  <change xml:id="CHG-3">Fixation of the revised passages and further revisions by Goethe using ink</change>`<br>`  <change xml:id="CHG-4">Addition of another stanza in a different hand, probably at a later stage</change>`<br>`  </listChange>`<br>` </creation>`<br>`</profileDesc>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <sequence>`<br>`  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"`<br>`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`  <alternate minOccurs="1"`<br>`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`<br>`  <elementRef key="listChange"/>` |

```
    <elementRef key="change"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element listChange
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute ordered { text }?,
   ( desc*, ( listChange | change )+ )
}
```

## *5.1.47. <listEvent>*

**<listEvent>** (list of events) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable event. [13.3.1. Basic Principles]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.eventLike model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** del desc head hi item note p q ref textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** abstract change licence<br>**namesdates:** listEvent occupation org person place<br>**textstructure:** div postscript salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc head<br>**namesdates:** event listEvent |

**Example**

```
<listEvent>
 <head>Battles of the American Civil War: Kentucky</head>
 <event xml:id="event01" when="1861-09-19">
  <label>Barbourville</label>
  <desc>The Battle of Barbourville was one of the early engagements of
     the American Civil War. It occurred September 19, 1861, in Knox
     County, Kentucky during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate
     Offensive. The battle is considered the first Confederate victory in
     the commonwealth, and threw a scare into Federal commanders, who
     rushed troops to central Kentucky in an effort to repel the invasion,
     which was finally thwarted at the <ref target="#event02">Battle of
       Camp Wildcat</ref> in October.</desc>
 </event>
 <event xml:id="event02" when="1861-10-21">
  <label>Camp Wild Cat</label>
  <desc>The Battle of Camp Wildcat (also known as Wildcat Mountain and Camp
     Wild Cat) was one of the early engagements of the American Civil
     War. It occurred October 21, 1861, in northern Laurel County, Kentucky
     during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate Offensive. The
     battle is considered one of the very first Union victories, and marked
     the first engagement of troops in the commonwealth of Kentucky.</desc>
 </event>
 <event xml:id="event03" from="1864-06-11"
  to="1864-06-12">
  <label>Cynthiana</label>
  <desc>The Battle of Cynthiana (or Kellar’s Bridge) was an engagement
     during the American Civil War that was fought on June 11 and 12, 1864,
     in Harrison County, Kentucky, near the town of Cynthiana. A part of
     Confederate Brigadier General John Hunt Morgan's 1864 Raid into
     Kentucky, the battle resulted in a victory by Union forces over the
     raiders and saved the town from capture.</desc>
 </event>
</listEvent>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"
```

```
    maxOccurs="1"/>
   <elementRef key="listRelation"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.eventLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="relation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listRelation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element listEvent
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   (
      model.headLike*,
      desc*,
      ( relation | listRelation )*,
      ( model.eventLike+, ( relation | listRelation )* )+
   )
}
```

## *5.1.48. <listOrg>*

**<listOrg>** (list of organizations) contains a list of elements, each of which provides information about an identifiable organization. [13.2.2. Organizational Names]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike model.orgPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** del desc head hi item note p q ref textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** abstract change licence<br>**namesdates:** listOrg occupation org<br>**textstructure:** div postscript salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc head<br>**namesdates:** listOrg org |
| **Note** | The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of organizations of a particular type if convenient. |
| **Example** | `<listOrg>`<br>`<head>Libyans</head>`<br>`<org>`<br>`<orgName>Adyrmachidae</orgName>`<br>`<desc>These people have, in most points, the same customs as the Egyptians, but use the costume of the Libyans. Their women wear on each leg a ring made of bronze [...]</desc>`<br>`</org>`<br>`<org>`<br>`<orgName>Nasamonians</orgName>`<br>`<desc>In summer they leave their flocks and herds upon the sea-shore, and go up the country to a place called Augila, where they gather the dates from the palms [...]</desc>`<br>`</org>`<br>`<org>`<br>`<orgName>Garamantians</orgName>`<br>`<desc>[...] avoid all society or intercourse with their fellow-men, have no weapon of war, and do not know how to defend themselves. [...]</desc>`<br>`<!-- ... -->`<br>`</org>`<br>`</listOrg>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><sequence><br><classRef key="model.headLike"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="1"/><br><elementRef key="listRelation"<br>minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/><br></alternate><br><sequence minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><alternate minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><elementRef key="org" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="1"/><br><elementRef key="listOrg" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="1"/><br></alternate><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><elementRef key="relation"<br>minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/><br><elementRef key="listRelation"<br>minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/><br></alternate><br></sequence><br></sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listOrg<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.typed.attributes,<br>att.declarable.attributes,<br>att.sortable.attributes,<br>(<br>model.headLike*,<br>desc*,<br>( relation \| listRelation )*,<br>( ( org \| listOrg )+, ( relation \| listRelation )* )+<br>)<br>} |

## *5.1.49. <listPerson>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<listPerson>** (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike model.orgPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** del desc head hi item note p q ref textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** abstract change licence<br>**namesdates:** listPerson occupation org<br>**textstructure:** div postscript salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc head<br>**namesdates:** listPerson org person |
| **Note** | The *type* attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient. |
| **Example** | <listPerson type="respondents"><br><personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/><br><person xml:id="P1234" sex="2" age="mid"/><br><person xml:id="P4332" sex="1" age="mid"/><br><listRelation> |

```
  <relation type="personal" name="spouse"
   mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/>
 </listRelation>
</listPerson>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="1"/>
   <elementRef key="listRelation"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <alternate minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.personLike"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listPerson"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   </alternate>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="relation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listRelation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element listPerson
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   (
      model.headLike*,
      desc*,
      ( relation | listRelation )*,
      ( ( model.personLike | listPerson )+, ( relation | listRelation )* )+
   )
}
```

### *5.1.50. <listPlace>*

**<listPlace>** (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [2.2.7. The Source Description 13.3.4. Places]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike model.orgPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** del desc head hi item note p q ref textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** abstract change licence<br>**namesdates:** listPlace occupation org place<br>**textstructure:** div postscript salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc head<br>**namesdates:** listPlace place |
| **Example** | `<listPlace type="offshoreIslands">`<br>` <place>`<br>`  <placeName>La roche qui pleure</placeName>`<br>` </place>`<br>` <place>` |

```
  <placeName>Ile aux cerfs</placeName>
 </place>
</listPlace>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="1"/>
   <elementRef key="listRelation"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <alternate minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.placeLike"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listPlace"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   </alternate>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="relation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listRelation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element listPlace
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   (
      model.headLike*,
      desc*,
      ( relation | listRelation )*,
      ( ( model.placeLike | listPlace )+, ( relation | listRelation )* )+
   )
}
```

## *5.1.51. <location>*

<**location**> (location) defines the location of a place as a set of geographical coordinates, in terms of other named geo-political entities, or as an address. [13.3.4. Places]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) |
| **Member of** | model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |

| | |
|---|---|
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl desc label note num<br>**msdescription:** msDesc<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country geo placeName settlement |
| **Example** | <place><br><placeName>Abbey Dore</placeName><br><location><br><geo>51.969604 -2.893146</geo><br></location><br></place> |
| **Example** | <place xml:id="BGbuilding" type="building"><br><placeName>Brasserie Georges</placeName><br><location><br><country key="FR"/><br><settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement><br><district type="arrondissement">IIème</district><br><district type="quartier">Perrache</district><br><placeName type="street"><br><num>30</num>, Cours de Verdun</placeName><br></location><br></place> |
| **Example** | <place type="imaginary"><br><placeName>Atlantis</placeName><br><location><br><offset>beyond</offset><br><placeName>The Pillars of <persName>Hercules</persName><br></placeName><br></location><br></place> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><elementRef key="precision"/><br><classRef key="model.labelLike"/><br><classRef key="model.placeNamePart"/><br><classRef key="model.offsetLike"/><br><classRef key="model.measureLike"/><br><classRef key="model.addressLike"/><br><classRef key="model.noteLike"/><br><classRef key="model.biblLike"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element location<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.typed.attributes,<br>att.datable.attributes,<br>att.editLike.attributes,<br>(<br>precision<br>\| model.labelLike<br>\| model.placeNamePart<br>\| model.offsetLike<br>\| model.measureLike<br>\| model.addressLike<br>\| model.noteLike<br>\| model.biblLike<br>)*<br>} |

### *5.1.52. <metamark>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<metamark>** contains or describes any kind of graphic or written signal within a document the function of which is to determine how it should be read rather than forming part of the actual content of the document. [11.3.4.2. Metamarks] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Attributes** | att.spanning (@spanTo) att.placement (@place) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (style, @rend, @rendition) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)<br>style — contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text<br>**Derived from** att.global.rendition |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Status** Required<br>**Datatype** teidata.text<br>**Suggested values include:** **cross-es**, **dots**, **line**, **stars**<br>function — describes the function (for example status, insertion, deletion, transposition) of the metamark.<br>**Status** Required<br>**Datatype** teidata.word<br>target — identifies one or more elements to which the metamark applies.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space |
| **Member of** | model.global |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del distinct foreign head hi item label list name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell table<br>**header:** authority change language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline div opener postscript salute signed text<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num p pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<surface>`<br>` <metamark function="used" rend="line"`<br>`  target="#X2"/>`<br>` <zone xml:id="zone-X2">`<br>`  <line>I am that halfgrown <add>angry</add> boy, fallen asleep</line>`<br>`  <line>The tears of foolish passion yet undried</line>`<br>`  <line>upon my cheeks.</line>`<br>`<!-- ... -->`<br>`  <line>I pass through <add>the</add> travels and <del>fortunes</del> of`<br>`  <retrace>thirty</retrace>`<br>`  </line>`<br>`  <line>years and become old,</line>`<br>`  <line>Each in its due order comes and goes,</line>`<br>`  <line>And thus a message for me comes.</line>`<br>`  <line>The</line>`<br>` </zone>`<br>` <metamark function="used"`<br>`  target="#zone-X2">Entered - Yes</metamark>`<br>`</surface>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element metamark`<br>`{`<br>`  att.spanning.attributes,` |

```
    att.placement.attributes,
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
    att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
    att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.global.change.attribute.change,
    att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
    att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
    att.global.source.attribute.source,
    attribute style { "crosses" | "dots" | "line" | "stars" },
    attribute function { text },
    attribute target { list { + } }?,
    macro.specialPara
}
```

### *5.1.53. <msDesc>*

| **<msDesc>** (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript or other text-bearing object such as an early printed book. [10.1. Overview] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.docStatus (@status) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** del desc head hi item note p q ref textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** change licence sourceDesc<br>**namesdates:** event location occupation org person place<br>**textstructure:** div postscript salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** head p<br>**msdescription:** msIdentifier physDesc |
| **Note** | Although the <msDesc> has primarily been designed with a view to encoding manuscript descriptions, it may also be used for other objects such as early printed books, fascicles, epigraphs, or any text-bearing objects that require substantial description. If an object is not text-bearing or the reasons for describing the object is not primarily the textual content, the more general `<object>` may be more suitable. |
| **Example** | `<msDesc>`<br>` <msIdentifier>`<br>`  <settlement>Oxford</settlement>`<br>`  <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>`<br>`  <idno type="Bod">MS Poet. Rawl. D. 169.</idno>`<br>` </msIdentifier>`<br>` <msContents>`<br>`  <msItem>`<br>`  <author>Geoffrey Chaucer</author>`<br>`  <title>The Canterbury Tales</title>`<br>`  </msItem>`<br>` </msContents>`<br>` <physDesc>`<br>`  <objectDesc>`<br>`  <p>A parchment codex of 136 folios, measuring approx`<br>`  28 by 19 inches, and containing 24 quires.</p>`<br>`  <p>The pages are margined and ruled throughout.</p>`<br>`  <p>Four hands have been identified in the manuscript: the first 44`<br>`  folios being written in two cursive anglicana scripts, while the`<br>`  remainder is for the most part in a mixed secretary hand.</p>`<br>`  </objectDesc>`<br>` </physDesc>`<br>`</msDesc>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <sequence>`<br>`  <elementRef key="msIdentifier"/>`<br>`  <classRef key="model.headLike"`<br>`  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`  <alternate>`<br>`  <classRef key="model.pLike"`<br>`  minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`  <sequence>` |

```
    <elementRef key="msContents"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="physDesc"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="history" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="additional"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <alternate>
     <elementRef key="msPart" minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     <elementRef key="msFrag" minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element msDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   att.docStatus.attributes,
   (
      msIdentifier,
      model.headLike*,
      (
         model.pLike+
       | (
            msContents?,
            physDesc?,
            history?,
            additional?,
            ( msPart* | msFrag* )
         )
      )
   )
}
```

### *5.1.54. <msIdentifier>*

**<msIdentifier>** (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript or similar object being described. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** collection institution repository<br>**namesdates:** country placeName settlement |
| **Example** | `<msIdentifier>`<br>` <settlement>San Marino</settlement>`<br>` <repository>Huntington Library</repository>`<br>` <idno>MS.El.26.C.9</idno>`<br>`</msIdentifier>` |
| **Schematron** | <sch:report test="not(parent::tei:msPart) and (local-name(*[1])='idno' or local-name(*[1])='altIdentifier' or normalize-space(.)='')">An msIdentifier must contain either a repository or location.</sch:report> |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <sequence>`<br>`  <sequence>`<br>`  <classRef key="model.placeNamePart"`<br>`  expand="sequenceOptional"/>`<br>`  <elementRef key="institution"`<br>`  minOccurs="0"/>`<br>`  <elementRef key="repository"`<br>`  minOccurs="0"/>`<br>`  <elementRef key="collection"`<br>`  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`  <elementRef key="idno" minOccurs="0"`<br>`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`  </sequence>`<br>`  <alternate minOccurs="0"` |

| | |
|---|---|
| | <content><br>  maxOccurs="unbounded"><br>  <elementRef key="msName"/><br>  <elementRef key="objectName"/><br>  <elementRef key="altIdentifier"/><br>  </alternate><br> </sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element msIdentifier<br>{<br>  att.global.attributes,<br>  (<br>  (<br>  placeName?,<br>  country?,<br>  settlement?,<br>  institution?,<br>  repository?,<br>  collection*,<br>  idno*<br>  ),<br>  ( msName \| objectName \| altIdentifier )*<br>  )<br>} |

## *5.1.55. <name>*

| **<name>** (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.6.1. Referring Strings] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent model.personPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp respStmt rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName person place placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included. |
| **Example** | <name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name><br><name type="place">Villingaholt</name><br><name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name><br><name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occleve</name> |
| **Content model** | <content><br> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/><br></content> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | `element name`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  att.personal.attributes,`<br>`  att.datable.attributes,`<br>`  att.editLike.attributes,`<br>`  att.typed.attributes,`<br>`  macro.phraseSeq`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.56. <nameLink>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<nameLink>** (name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as *van der* or *of*. [13.2.1. Personal Names] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<persName>`<br>`<forename>Frederick</forename>`<br>`<nameLink>van der</nameLink>`<br>`<surname>Tronck</surname>`<br>`</persName>` |
| **Example** | `<persName>`<br>`<forename>Alfred</forename>`<br>`<nameLink>de</nameLink>`<br>`<surname>Musset</surname>`<br>`</persName>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element nameLink`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  att.typed.attributes,`<br>`  macro.phraseSeq`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.57. <nationality>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<nationality>** (nationality) contains an informal description of a person's present or past nationality or citizenship. [15.2.2. The Participant Description] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (at- |

| | |
|---|---|
| | t.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)<br>type — characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.<br>**Derived from:** att.typed<br>**Status:** Optional<br>**Datatype:** teidata.enumerated<br>**Sample values include:** **birth** **naturalised** **self-assigned** |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<nationality key="US" notBefore="1966"> Obtained US Citizenship in 1966</nationality>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element nationality`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  att.datable.attributes,`<br>`  att.editLike.attributes,`<br>`  att.naming.attributes,`<br>`  att.typed.attribute.subtype,`<br>`  attribute type { text }?,`<br>`  macro.phraseSeq`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.58. <note>*

| <**note**> (note) contains a note or annotation. [3.9.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.12.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) att.anchoring (@anchored, @targetEnd) |
| **Member of** | model.noteLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del distinct foreign head hi item label list name note num p q ref resp respStmt rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell table |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **header:** authority change language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death event forename location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName person place placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline div opener postscript salute signed text<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num p pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":<br>`And yet it is not only in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the painterly <note place="bottom" type="gloss" resp="#MDMH"> <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object, the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid confusion, they have been distinguished in English as <mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and <mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively. </note> style of the Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this psychological significance.`<br>`<!-- elsewhere in the document --> <respStmt xml:id="MDMH"> <resp>translation from German to English</resp> <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name> </respStmt>`<br>For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header. |
| **Example** | The global *n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:<br>`Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the family during the second half of the eleventh century, <note n="126" anchored="true"> The alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from Geniza documents published by Jacob Mann.`<br>However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers. |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element note { att.global.attributes, att.placement.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.written.attributes, att.anchoring.attributes, macro.specialPara }` |

### *5.1.59. <num>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<num>** (number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures] | |
| **Module** | core |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.typed (type, @subtype)<br>type — indicates the type of numeric value.<br>**Derived from:** att.typed<br>**Status:** Optional<br>**Datatype:** teidata.enumerated<br>**Suggested values include:** **cardinal** absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5; **ordinal** ordinal number, e.g. 21st; **fraction** fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters; **percentage** a percentage<br>**Note:** If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.<br>value — supplies the value of the number in standard form.<br>**Status:** Optional<br>**Datatype:** teidata.numeric<br>**Values:** a numeric value.<br>**Note:** The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype teidata.numeric. |
| **Member of** | model.measureLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 18. Feature Structures. The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications. |
| **Example** | `<p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on my <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday</p>`<br>`<p>Light travels at <num value="3E10">3×10<hi rend="sup">10</hi></num> cm per second.</p>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| | `</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element num { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, att.ranging.attributes, attribute type { "cardinal" \| "ordinal" \| "fraction" \| "percentage" }?, attribute value { text }?, macro.phraseSeq }` |

## *5.1.60. <occupation>*

<**occupation**> (occupation) contains an informal description of a person's trade, profession or occupation. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)<br>type — characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.<br>**Derived from:** att.typed<br>**Status:** Optional<br>**Datatype:** teidata.enumerated<br>**Sample values include:** **primary** **other** **paid** **unpaid**<br>scheme — indicates the classification system or taxonomy in use, for example by supplying the identifier of a `<taxonomy>` element, or pointing to some other resource.<br>**Status:** Optional<br>**Datatype:** teidata.pointer<br>code — identifies an occupation code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the *scheme* attribute.<br>**Status:** Optional<br>**Datatype:** teidata.pointer |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num p pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification. |
| **Example** | `<occupation>accountant</occupation>` |
| **Example** | `<occupation scheme="#occupationtaxonomy" code="#acc">accountant</occupation>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element occupation { att.global.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.naming.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute type { text }?, attribute scheme { text }?, attribute code { text }?, macro.specialPara }` |

### *5.1.61. <opener>*

| <**opener**> (opener) groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divTopPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list<br>**textstructure:** div postscript |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**textstructure:** byline dateline salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<opener> <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline> </opener>` |
| **Example** | `<opener> <dateline> <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name> <date>November 11, 1848</date> </dateline> <salute>My dear Sir,</salute> </opener> <p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have prevented me from earlier enquiring...</p>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <elementRef key="argument"/> <elementRef key="byline"/>` |

```
  <elementRef key="dateline"/>
  <elementRef key="epigraph"/>
  <elementRef key="salute"/>
  <elementRef key="signed"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element opener
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      text
    | model.gLike
    | model.phrase
    | argument
    | byline
    | dateline
    | epigraph
    | salute
    | signed
    | model.global
   )*
}
```

### *5.1.62. <org>*

**<org>** (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people. [13.3.3. Organizational Data]

**Module**: namesdates

**Attributes**: att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey)

role — specifies a primary role or classification for the organization.

- **Status**: Optional
- **Datatype**: 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace
- **Note**: Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, familyGroup, or politicalParty, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <desc> for each `<valItem>` element in the schema specification of the project's customization.

**Member of**: model.personLike

**Contained by**: **namesdates:** listOrg listPerson org

**May contain**:
**core:** bibl desc head label lb name note p pb rs
**header:** idno
**msdescription:** msDesc
**namesdates:** country event forename listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink org orgName persName person place placeName settlement surname

**Example**

```
<org xml:id="JAMs">
 <orgName>Justified Ancients of Mummu</orgName>
 <desc>An underground anarchist collective spearheaded by
 <persName>Hagbard Celine</persName>, who fight the Illuminati
   from a golden submarine, the <name>Leif Ericson</name>
 </desc>
 <bibl>
  <author>Robert Shea</author>
  <author>Robert Anton Wilson</author>
  <title>The Illuminatus! Trilogy</title>
 </bibl>
</org>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
```

```
  <alternate>
   <classRef key="model.pLike"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.nameLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.orgPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>
   </alternate>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
   <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
   <elementRef key="link"/>
   <elementRef key="ptr"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.personLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element org
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   attribute role { list { + } }?,
   (
      model.headLike*,
      (
         model.pLike*
       | (
            model.labelLike
          | model.nameLike
          | model.placeLike
          | model.orgPart
          | model.milestoneLike
         )*
      ),
      ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike | linkGrp | link | ptr )*,
      model.personLike*
   )
}
```

### *5.1.63. <orgName>*

| **<orgName>** (organization name) contains an organizational name. [13.2.2. Organizational Names] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp respStmt rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in the <orgName key="PAS1" type="voluntary'`<br>`<placeName key="PEN">Pennsyla.</placeName> Abolition Society`<br>`</orgName> [...]` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element orgName`<br>`{`<br>`att.global.attributes,`<br>`att.datable.attributes,`<br>`att.editLike.attributes,`<br>`att.personal.attributes,`<br>`att.typed.attributes,`<br>`macro.phraseSeq`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.64. <origDate>*

| **<origDate>** (origin date) contains any form of date, used to identify the date of origin for a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.3.1. Origination] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.msdesc |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<origDate notBefore="-0300"`<br>`notAfter="-0200">3rd century BCE</origDate>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<alternate minOccurs="0"`<br>`maxOccurs="unbounded">`<br>`<textNode/>`<br>`<classRef key="model.gLike"/>`<br>`<classRef key="model.phrase"/>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| | <classRef key="model.global"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element origDate<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.datable.attributes,<br>att.dimensions.attributes,<br>att.editLike.attributes,<br>att.typed.attributes,<br>( text \| model.gLike \| model.phrase \| model.global )*<br>} |

### *5.1.65. <origPlace>*

| | |
|---|---|
| <**origPlace**> (origin place) contains any form of place name, used to identify the place of origin for a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.3.1. Origination] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.msdesc |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | The *type* attribute may be used to distinguish different kinds of ‘origin’, for example original place of publication, as opposed to original place of printing. |
| **Example** | <origPlace>Birmingham</origPlace> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element origPlace<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.naming.attributes,<br>att.datable.attributes,<br>att.editLike.attributes,<br>att.typed.attributes,<br>macro.phraseSeq<br>} |

### *5.1.66. <p>*

| |
|---|
| <**p**> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents] |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note q textLang<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** abstract availability change encodingDesc langUsage licence projectDesc publicationStmt seriesStmt<br>**msdescription:** msDesc physDesc<br>**namesdates:** event occupation org person place<br>**textstructure:** div postscript<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said. <q>What have you done?</q></p><p><q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied Thjostolf.</p><p><q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.</p><p><q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for me.</q></p>` |
| **Schematron** | <sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:ab or ancestor::tei:p) and not( ancestor::tei:floatingText \|parent::tei:exemplum \|parent::tei:item \|parent::tei:note \|parent::tei:q \|parent::tei:quote \|parent::tei:remarks \|parent::tei:said \|parent::tei:sp \|parent::tei:stage \|parent::tei:cell \|parent::tei:figure )"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. </sch:report> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg) and not( ancestor::tei:floatingText \|parent::tei:figure \|parent::tei:note )"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab, unless p is a child of figure or note, or is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:report> |
| **Content model** | `<content><macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/></content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element p{ att.global.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, att.fragmentable.attributes, att.written.attributes, macro.paraContent}` |

### *5.1.67. <pb>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<pb>** (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements] | |
| **Module** | core |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) att.global (n, @xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)<br>n — (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.<br>**Derived from** att.global<br>**Status** Required<br>**Datatype** teidata.text<br>facs — (facsimile) points to one or more images, portions of an image, or surfaces which correspond to the current element.<br>**Derived from** att.global.facs<br>**Status** Required<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del distinct foreign head hi item label list name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell table<br>**header:** authority change language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName person placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline div opener postscript salute signed text<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | A <pb> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb> element itself.<br>The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives. |
| **Example** | Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.<br>`<p> ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/>`<br>`<!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/>`<br>`<!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </p>` |
| **Example** | A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the *facs* attribute<br>`<body>`<br>` <pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/>`<br>`<!-- page1.png contains an image of the page;`<br>`  the text it contains is encoded here -->`<br>` <p>`<br>`<!-- ... -->`<br>` </p>`<br>` <pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/>`<br>`<!-- similarly, for page 2 -->`<br>` <p>`<br>`<!-- ... -->`<br>` </p>`<br>`</body>` |
| **Schematron** | <s:rule context="tei:body//tei:pb"> <s:assert test="matches(@n, '^[0-9]+$')"> @n attribute must be a positive non-zero integer </s:assert> </s:rule> |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <empty/>`<br>`</content>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| | |
| **Schema Declaration** | element pb<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.global.source.attribute.source,<br>att.typed.attributes,<br>att.edition.attributes,<br>att.spanning.attributes,<br>att.breaking.attributes,<br>attribute n { text },<br>attribute facs { list { + } },<br>empty<br>} |

### *5.1.68. <persName>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<persName>** (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. [13.2.1. Personal Names] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp respStmt rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName person placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | <persName><br><forename>Edward</forename><br><forename>George</forename><br><surname type="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</surname>, <roleName>Baron Lytton of<br><placeName>Knebworth</placeName><br></roleName><br></persName> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element persName |

```
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.personal.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq
}
```

### *5.1.69. <person>*

**<person>** (person) provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2.2. The Participant Description]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey)<br>role — specifies a primary role or classification for the person.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace<br>**Note** Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a `<valList>` element in the project schema specification.<br>sex — specifies the sex of the person.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace<br>**Note** Values for this attribute may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.<br>gender — specifies the gender of the person.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.gender separated by whitespace<br>**Note** Values for this attribute may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.<br>age — specifies an age group for the person.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Note** Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a `<valList>` element in the project schema specification. |
| **Member of** | model.personLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listPerson org |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl lb name note p pb<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth death event listEvent nationality occupation persName sex<br>**transcr:** metamark space |
| **Note** | May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the model.personPart class. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | <person sex="F" age="adult"><br> Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French<br>status B2. <br></person> |
| **Example** | <person sex="intersex" role="god"<br>age="immortal"><br><persName>Hermaphroditos</persName><br><persName xml:lang="grc">##μ#########</persName><br></person> |
| **Example** | <person xml:id="Ovi01" sex="M" role="poet"><br><persName xml:lang="en">Ovid</persName><br><persName xml:lang="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</persName><br><birth when="-0044-03-20"> 20 March 43 BC <placeName><br><settlement type="city">Sulmona</settlement><br><country key="IT">Italy</country><br></placeName><br></birth><br><death notBefore="0017" notAfter="0018">17 or 18 AD <placeName><br><settlement type="city">Tomis (Constanta)</settlement><br><country key="RO">Romania</country><br></placeName><br></death><br></person> |
| **Example** | The following exemplifies an adaptation of the vCard standard to indicate an unknown gender for a fictional character.<br><person xml:id="ariel" gender="U"><br><persName>Ariel</persName><br><note>Character in <title level="m">The Tempest</title>.</note><br></person> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate><br><classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><classRef key="model.personPart"/><br><classRef key="model.global"/><br><elementRef key="ptr"/><br></alternate><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element person<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.editLike.attributes,<br>att.sortable.attributes,<br>attribute role { list { + } }?,<br>attribute sex { list { + } }?,<br>attribute gender { list { + } }?,<br>attribute age { text }?,<br>( model.pLike+ \| ( model.personPart \| model.global \| ptr )* )<br>} |

## *5.1.70. <physDesc>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<physDesc>** (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object optionally subdivided using more specialized elements from the model.physDescPart class. [10.7. Physical Description] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Example** | <physDesc><br><objectDesc form="codex"><br><supportDesc material="perg"><br><support>Parchment.</support><br><extent>i + 55 leaves<br><dimensions scope="all" type="leaf"<br>unit="inch"><br><height>7¼</height><br><width>5#</width><br></dimensions><br></extent> |

```
  </supportDesc>
  <layoutDesc>
   <layout columns="2">In double columns.</layout>
  </layoutDesc>
 </objectDesc>
 <handDesc>
  <p>Written in more than one hand.</p>
 </handDesc>
 <decoDesc>
  <p>With a few coloured capitals.</p>
 </decoDesc>
</physDesc>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.physDescPart"
   expand="sequenceOptional"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element physDesc { att.global.attributes, ( model.pLike* ) }
```

### *5.1.71. <place>*

| <**place**> (place) contains data about a geographic location [13.3.4. Places] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.placeLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listPlace org place |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl desc head label name note p<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc<br>**namesdates:** country event listEvent listPlace location place placeName settlement |

**Example**

```
<place>
 <country>Lithuania</country>
 <country xml:lang="lt">Lietuva</country>
 <place>
  <settlement>Vilnius</settlement>
 </place>
 <place>
  <settlement>Kaunas</settlement>
 </place>
</place>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate>
   <classRef key="model.pLike"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.placeStateLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.eventLike"/>
    <elementRef key="name"/>
   </alternate>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
   <elementRef key="idno"/>
   <elementRef key="ptr"/>
   <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
   <elementRef key="link"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
   <elementRef key="listPlace"/>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| | </alternate><br></sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element place<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.typed.attributes,<br>att.editLike.attributes,<br>att.sortable.attributes,<br>(<br>model.headLike*,<br>(<br>model.pLike*<br>\| ( model.labelLike \| model.placeStateLike \| model.eventLike \| name )*<br>),<br>( model.noteLike \| model.biblLike \| idno \| ptr \| linkGrp \| link )*,<br>( model.placeLike \| listPlace )*<br>)<br>} |

## *5.1.72. <placeName>*

| <**placeName**> (place name) contains an absolute or relative place name. [13.2.3. Place Names] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution msIdentifier origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | <placeName><br><settlement>Rochester</settlement><br><region>New York</region><br></placeName> |
| **Example** | <placeName><br><geogName>Arrochar Alps</geogName><br><region>Argylshire</region><br></placeName> |
| **Example** | <placeName><br><measure>10 miles</measure><br><offset>Northeast of</offset><br><settlement>Attica</settlement><br></placeName> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/><br></content> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | `element placeName { att.datable.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.global.attributes, att.personal.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }` |

### *5.1.73. <postCode>*

| **<postCode>** (postal code) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail. [3.6.2. Addresses] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used. |
| **Example** | `<postCode>HR1 3LR</postCode>` |
| **Example** | `<postCode>60142-7</postCode>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <textNode/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element postCode { att.global.attributes, text }` |

### *5.1.74. <postscript>*

| **<postscript>** contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divBottomPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list<br>**figures:** table<br>**textstructure:** div postscript |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl desc head label lb list note p pb q<br>**figures:** table<br>**msdescription:** msDesc<br>**namesdates:** listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace<br>**textstructure:** closer opener postscript signed<br>**transcr:** metamark space |
| **Example** | `<div type="letter"> <opener> <dateline> <placeName>Rimaone</placeName> <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date> </dateline> <salute>Dear Susan,</salute> </opener> <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p> <closer>` |

```
  <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
  <signed>Seymour</signed>
 </closer>
 <postscript>
  <label>P.S.</label>
  <p>The collision occured on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</date>.</p>
 </postscript>
</div>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.divTopPart"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.common"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.common"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element postscript
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      ( model.global | model.divTopPart )*,
      model.common,
      ( model.global | model.common )*,
      ( model.divBottomPart, model.global* )*
   )
}
```

### *5.1.75. <principal>*

**<principal>** (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **header:** titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<principal ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/105517912">Gary Taylor</principal>` |

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element principal
```

| | |
|---|---|
| | {<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.canonical.attributes,<br>att.datable.attributes,<br>macro.phraseSeq.limited<br>} |

### *5.1.76. <profileDesc>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<profileDesc>** (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.teiHeaderPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **header:** abstract creation langUsage textClass |
| **Note** | Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts. |
| **Example** | <profileDesc><br><langUsage><br><language ident="fr">French</language><br></langUsage><br><textDesc n="novel"><br><channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel><br><constitution type="single"/><br><derivation type="original"/><br><domain type="art"/><br><factuality type="fiction"/><br><interaction type="none"/><br><preparedness type="prepared"/><br><purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/><br><purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/><br></textDesc><br><settingDesc><br><setting><br><name>Paris, France</name><br><time>Late 19th century</time><br></setting><br></settingDesc><br></profileDesc> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><classRef key="model.profileDescPart"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, model.profileDescPart* } |

### *5.1.77. <projectDesc>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<projectDesc>** (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [2.3.1. The Project Description 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Example** | <projectDesc><br> Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990 <br></projectDesc> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element projectDesc<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.declarable.attributes,<br>model.pLike+<br>} |

## *5.1.78. <publicationStmt>*

| | |
|---|---|
| <**publicationStmt**> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date p ref<br>**header:** authority availability idno |
| **Note** | Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order. |
| **Example** | <publicationStmt><br><publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher><br><pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace><br><date when="1846"/><br></publicationStmt> |
| **Example** | <publicationStmt><br><publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher><br><pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace><br><availability><br> Available under licence only <br></availability><br><date when="1992">1992</date><br></publicationStmt> |
| **Example** | <publicationStmt><br><publisher>Zea Books</publisher><br><pubPlace>Lincoln, NE</pubPlace><br><date>2017</date><br><availability><br> This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license. <br></availability><br><ptr target="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/><br></publicationStmt> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate><br><sequence minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/><br><classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br><classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element publicationStmt<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>(<br>( model.publicationStmtPart.agency, model.publicationStmtPart.detail* )+<br>\| model.pLike+ |

```
    )
}
```

### *5.1.79. <q>*

**<q>** (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [3.3.3. Quotation]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom) (att.ascribed (@who))<br>type (type) may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Suggested values include:**<br>**spoken** (spoken) representation of speech<br>**thought** (thought) representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue<br>**written** (written) quotation from a written source<br>**so-Called** (so called) authorial distance<br>**foreign** (foreign)<br>**distinct** (distinct) linguistically distinct<br>**term** technical term<br>**emph** (emph) rhetorically emphasized<br>**mentioned** (mentioned) refering to itself, not its normal referent |
| **Member of** | model.common model.hiLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline div opener postscript salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num p pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space |

| | |
|---|---|
| | character data |
| **Note** | May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of *rend* that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks. |
| **Example** | `It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> — to enter the letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press <q>0 0 f c</q>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element q { att.global.attributes, att.ascribed.directed.attributes, attribute type { "spoken" \| "thought" \| "written" \| "soCalled" \| "foreign" \| "distinct" \| "term" \| "emph" \| "mentioned" }?, macro.specialPara }` |

### *5.1.80. <ref>*

| **<ref>** (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.cReferencing (@cRef) att.declaring (@decls) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.internetMedia (@mimeType) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.ptrLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal publicationStmt<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive. |
| **Example** | `See especially <ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second sentence</ref>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | `See also <ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term></ref>.` |
| **Schematron** | <sch:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <sch:name/> </sch:report> |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element ref { att.cReferencing.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, att.global.attributes, att.internetMedia.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.paraContent }` |

### *5.1.81. <repository>*

| | |
|---|---|
| <**repository**> (repository) contains the name of a repository within which manuscripts or other objects are stored, possibly forming part of an institution. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msIdentifier |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<msIdentifier> <settlement>Oxford</settlement> <institution>University of Oxford</institution> <repository>Bodleian Library</repository> <idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno> </msIdentifier>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element repository { att.global.attributes, att.naming.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }` |

### *5.1.82. <resp>*

| | |
|---|---|
| <**resp**> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, |

| | |
|---|---|
| | @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** respStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | The attribute *ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html for bibliographic usage. |
| **Example** | `<respStmt>`<br>`<resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</resp>`<br>`<name>Edward Child</name>`<br>`</respStmt>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element resp`<br>`{`<br>`att.global.attributes,`<br>`att.canonical.attributes,`<br>`att.datable.attributes,`<br>`macro.phraseSeq.limited`<br>`}` |

## *5.1.83. <respStmt>*

**<respStmt>** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **header:** seriesStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** name note resp<br>**namesdates:** orgName persName |
| **Example** | `<respStmt>`<br>`<resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>`<br>`<persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>`<br>`</respStmt>` |
| **Example** | `<respStmt>`<br>`<resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>`<br>`<name>Alan Morrison</name>`<br>`</respStmt>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<sequence>`<br>`<alternate>`<br>`<sequence>`<br>`<elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"`<br>`maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`<classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"`<br>`minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`</sequence>`<br>`<sequence>` |

```
    <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <elementRef key="note" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element respStmt
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   (
      ( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ ) | ( model.nameLike.agent+, resp+ ) ),
      note*
   )
}
```

### *5.1.84. <revisionDesc>*

**<revisionDesc>** (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.docStatus (@status) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **core:** list<br>**header:** change listChange |
| **Note** | If present on this element, the *status* attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally <change> elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list. |
| **Example** | `<revisionDesc status="embargoed">`<br>`<change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>`<br>`</revisionDesc>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<alternate>`<br>`<elementRef key="list"/>`<br>`<elementRef key="listChange"/>`<br>`<elementRef key="change" minOccurs="1"`<br>`maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`</alternate>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element revisionDesc`<br>`{`<br>`att.global.attributes,`<br>`att.docStatus.attributes,`<br>`( list \| listChange \| change+ )`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.85. <row>*

**<row>** (row) contains one row of a table. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | figures |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols) |
| **Contained by** | **figures:** table |
| **May contain** | **figures:** cell |
| **Example** | `<row role="data">`<br>`<cell role="label">Classics</cell>`<br>`<cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| | `</row>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <elementRef key="cell" minOccurs="1"`<br>`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element row { att.global.attributes, att.tableDecoration.attributes, cell+ }` |

### *5.1.86. <rs>*

**<rs>** (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [13.2.1. Personal Names 3.6.1. Referring Strings]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) att.canonical (ref, @key) att.typed (type, @subtype)<br>ref — (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.<br>**Derived from:** att.canonical<br>**Status:** Required<br>**Datatype:** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space<br>type — characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.<br>**Derived from:** att.typed<br>**Status:** Required<br>**Datatype:** teidata.enumerated<br>**Suggested values include:** **org**, **person**, **place** |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said <rs type="person">his lady</rs>`<br>` to him one day,`<br>`<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at`<br>` last?</q>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schematron** | <s:rule context="tei:body//tei:rs"> <s:assert test="@type and @ref">Both @type and @ref are mandatory</s:assert> </s:rule> |
| **Content model** | <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element rs { att.global.attributes, att.naming.attribute.role, att.naming.attribute.nymRef, att.canonical.attribute.key, att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute ref { list { + } }, attribute type { "org" \| "person" \| "place" }, macro.phraseSeq } |

### *5.1.87. <salute>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<salute>** (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list<br>**figures:** table<br>**textstructure:** closer div opener |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | <salute>To all courteous mindes, that will voutchsafe the readinge.</salute> |
| **Content model** | <content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element salute { att.global.attributes, att.written.attributes, macro.paraContent } |

### *5.1.88. <seriesStmt>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<seriesStmt>** (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. The Series Statement 2.2. The File Description] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |

| | |
|---|---|
| **May contain** | **core:** p respStmt title<br>**header:** idno |
| **Example** | <seriesStmt><br><title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title><br><respStmt><br><resp>ed. by</resp><br><name>Jan Gonda</name><br></respStmt><br><biblScope unit="volume">1.2</biblScope><br><idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno><br></seriesStmt> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate><br><classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><sequence><br><elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><elementRef key="editor"/><br><elementRef key="respStmt"/><br></alternate><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><elementRef key="idno"/><br><elementRef key="biblScope"/><br></alternate><br></sequence><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element seriesStmt<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.declarable.attributes,<br>( model.pLike+ \| ( title+, ( editor \| respStmt )*, ( idno \| biblScope )* ) )<br>} |

## *5.1.89. <settlement>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<settlement>** (settlement) contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit. [13.2.3. Place Names] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution msIdentifier origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<placeName>`<br>` <settlement type="town">Glasgow</settlement>`<br>` <region>Scotland</region>`<br>`</placeName>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element settlement`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  att.naming.attributes,`<br>`  att.typed.attributes,`<br>`  att.datable.attributes,`<br>`  macro.phraseSeq`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.90. <sex>*

| **<sex>** (sex) specifies the sex of an organism. [13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)<br>value — supplies a coded value for sex<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace<br>**Note** Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or they may refer to an external standard. |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | As with other culturally-constructed traits such as age and gender, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts varies. The normalizing attributes are provided only as an optional means of simplifying that variety for purposes of interoperability or project-internal taxonomies for consistency, and should not be used where that is inappropriate or unhelpful. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail. |
| **Example** | `<sex value="F">female</sex>` |
| **Example** | `<sex value="I">Intersex</sex>` |
| **Example** | `<sex value="TG F">Female (TransWoman)</sex>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | |

| | |
|---|---|
| | element sex<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.editLike.attributes,<br>att.datable.attributes,<br>att.typed.attributes,<br>attribute value { list { + } }?,<br>macro.phraseSeq<br>} |

### *5.1.91. <signed>*

| <**signed**> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divBottomPart model.divTopPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list<br>**figures:** table<br>**textstructure:** closer div opener postscript |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | <signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name><br></signed> |
| **Example** | <closer><br><signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,<br><list><br><item>John Bull,</item><br><item>Nic. Frog.</item><br></list><br></signed><br></closer> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element signed<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.written.attributes,<br>macro.paraContent<br>} |

### *5.1.92. <sourceDesc>*

| <**sourceDesc**> (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **Example** | `<sourceDesc>`<br>` <bibl>`<br>`  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In`<br>` <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.`<br>` <publisher>OUP</publisher>`<br>`  <date>1968</date>. </bibl>`<br>`</sourceDesc>` |
| **Example** | `<sourceDesc>`<br>` <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>`<br>`</sourceDesc>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">`<br>`  <elementRef key="msDesc" minOccurs="1"`<br>`  maxOccurs="1"/>`<br>`  <elementRef key="bibl"/>`<br>` </sequence>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element sourceDesc`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  att.declarable.attributes,`<br>`  ( msDesc, bibl )`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.93. <space>*

| | |
|---|---|
| <**space**> (space) indicates the location of a significant space in the text. [11.4.1. Space] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Attributes** | att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (resp, @cert) att.global.source (@source)<br>resp (responsible party) (responsible party) indicates the individual responsible for identifying and measuring the space<br>**Derived from** att.global.responsibility<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space<br>dim (dimension) indicates whether the space is horizontal or vertical.<br>**Status** Recommended<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **horizontal** the space is horizontal.<br>**vertical** the space is vertical.<br>**Note** For irregular shapes in two dimensions, the value for this attribute should reflect the more important of the two dimensions. In conventional left-right scripts, a space with both vertical and horizontal components should be classed as vertical. |
| **Member of** | model.global.edit |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del distinct foreign head hi item label list name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell table |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **header:** authority change language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline div opener postscript salute signed text<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Note** | This element should be used wherever it is desired to record an unusual space in the source text, e.g. space left for a word to be filled in later, for later rubrication, etc. It is not intended to be used to mark normal inter-word space or the like. |
| **Example** | `By god if wommen had writen storyes`<br>`As <space quantity="7" unit="minims"/> han within her oratoryes` |
| **Example** | `#########<space quantity="1" unit="chars"/>##` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<alternate minOccurs="0"`<br>`maxOccurs="unbounded">`<br>`<classRef key="model.descLike"/>`<br>`<classRef key="model.certLike"/>`<br>`</alternate>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element space`<br>`{`<br>`att.global.attribute.xmlid,`<br>`att.global.attribute.n,`<br>`att.global.attribute.xmllang,`<br>`att.global.attribute.xmlbase,`<br>`att.global.attribute.xmlspace,`<br>`att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,`<br>`att.global.rendition.attribute.style,`<br>`att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,`<br>`att.global.facs.attribute.facs,`<br>`att.global.change.attribute.change,`<br>`att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,`<br>`att.global.source.attribute.source,`<br>`att.typed.attributes,`<br>`att.dimensions.attributes,`<br>`attribute resp { list { + } }?,`<br>`attribute dim { "horizontal" \| "vertical" }?,`<br>`( model.descLike \| model.certLike )*`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.94. <stamp>*

| **<stamp>** (stamp) contains a word or phrase describing a stamp or similar device. [10.3.3. Watermarks and Stamps] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.msdesc |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<rubric>Apologyticu TTVLLIANI AC IGNORATIA IN XPO IHV<lb/>`<br>` SI NON LICET<lb/>`<br>` NOBIS RO<lb/>`<br>` manii imperii <stamp>Bodleian stamp</stamp>`<br>` <lb/>`<br>`</rubric>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element stamp`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  att.typed.attributes,`<br>`  att.datable.attributes,`<br>`  macro.phraseSeq`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.95. <street>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<street>** contains a full street address including any name or number identifying a building as well as the name of the street or route on which it is located. [3.6.2. Addresses] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | The order and presentation of house names and numbers and street names, etc., may vary considerably in different countries. The encoding should reflect the order which is appropriate in the country concerned. |
| **Example** | `<street>via della Faggiola, 36</street>` |
| **Example** | `<street>`<br>` <name>Duntaggin</name>, 110 Southmoor Road`<br>`</street>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element street { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }` |

### *5.1.96. <surname>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<surname>** (surname) contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [13.2.1. Personal Names] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, |

| | |
|---|---|
| | @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine address author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<surname type="combine">St John Stevas</surname>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element surname`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  att.personal.attributes,`<br>`  att.typed.attributes,`<br>`  macro.phraseSeq`<br>`}` |

### *5.1.97. <table>*

| **<table>** (table) contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [14.1.1. TEI Tables] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | figures |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)<br>rows — (rows) indicates the number of rows in the table.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.count<br>**Note** If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows. Rows should be presented from top to bottom.<br>cols — (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.count<br>**Note** If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns. Within each row, columns should be presented left to right. |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** del desc head hi item note p q ref textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** abstract change licence |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **namesdates:** occupation<br>**textstructure:** div postscript salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** head lb note pb<br>**figures:** row<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline postscript salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark space |
| **Note** | Contains an optional heading and a series of rows.<br>Any rendition information should be supplied using the global *rend* attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate. |
| **Example** | <table rows="4" cols="4"><br><head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head><br><row role="label"><br><cell role="data"/><br><cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell><br><cell role="data">Beds</cell><br><cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell><br></row><br><row role="data"><br><cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell><br><cell role="data">5</cell><br><cell role="data">8</cell><br><cell role="data">128</cell><br></row><br><row role="data"><br><cell role="label">Thetford</cell><br><cell role="data">3</cell><br><cell role="data">6</cell><br><cell role="data">36</cell><br></row><br><row role="data"><br><cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell><br><cell role="data">3</cell><br><cell role="data">5</cell><br><cell role="data">20</cell><br></row><br><row role="data"><br><cell role="label">Wymondham</cell><br><cell role="data">1</cell><br><cell role="data">11</cell><br><cell role="data">22</cell><br></row><br></table> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><sequence><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><classRef key="model.headLike"/><br><classRef key="model.global"/><br></alternate><br><alternate><br><sequence minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><elementRef key="row"/><br><classRef key="model.global"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br><sequence minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><classRef key="model.graphicLike"/><br><classRef key="model.global"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br></alternate><br><sequence minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><classRef key="model.divBottom"/><br><classRef key="model.global"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br></sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element table<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.typed.attributes,<br>attribute rows { text }?,<br>attribute cols { text }?,<br>( |

```
      ( model.headLike | model.global )*,
      ( ( row, model.global* )+ | ( model.graphicLike, model.global* )+ ),
      ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
   )
}
```

### *5.1.98. <teiHeader>*

| **<teiHeader>** (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **header:** encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc |
| **Note** | One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document. |
| **Example** | |

```
<teiHeader>
 <fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
   <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
   <author>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</author>
   <respStmt>
    <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
    <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
   </respStmt>
   <respStmt>
    <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
    <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
   </respStmt>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
   <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
   <address>
    <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
   </address>
   <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
   <availability>
    <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
   </availability>
   <date when="1968">1968</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
   <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile,
       1968)</bibl>
  </sourceDesc>
 </fileDesc>
 <encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
   <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling
       concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the
       editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
  </projectDesc>
  <editorialDecl>
   <correction>
    <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
   </correction>
   <normalization>
    <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured
         forms are not encoded.</p>
   </normalization>
  </editorialDecl>
  <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
   <cRefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(.*)"
    replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">
    <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that
         listed here: <list>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
      </item>
      <item>a period</item>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
      </item>
      <item>a space</item>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
      </item>
     </list>
    </p>
   </cRefPattern>
  </refsDecl>
 </encodingDesc>
 <revisionDesc>
```

```
  <list>
   <item>
    <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
   <item>
    <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
  </list>
 </revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
  <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="revisionDesc"
   minOccurs="0"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element teiHeader
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}
```

### *5.1.99. <term>*

**<term>** (term) contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.4.1. Terms and Glosses]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.cReferencing (@cRef) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation keywords language licence principal<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address date del distinct foreign hi lb name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | When this element appears within an `<index>` element, it is understood to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for that location. Elsewhere, it is understood simply to indicate that its content is to be regarded as a technical or specialised term. It may be associated with a `<gloss>` element by means of its *ref* attribute; alternatively a `<gloss>` element may point to a <term> element by means of its *target* attribute.<br>In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.<br>As with other members of the att.canonical class, instances of this element occuring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the *ref* attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the *key* attribute). Because the mutually exclusive *target* and *cRef* attributes overlap with the function of the *ref* attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | `A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a <term>parser</term>, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.` |
| **Example** | `We may define <term xml:id="TDPV1" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as <gloss target="#TDPV1">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>` |
| **Example** | `We may define <term ref="#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as <gloss xml:id="TDPV2">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>` |
| **Example** | `We discuss Leech's concept of <term ref="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> below.` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element term { att.global.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, att.sortable.attributes, att.cReferencing.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }` |

### *5.1.100. <text>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<text>** (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.resource |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **core:** lb note pb<br>**textstructure:** body<br>**transcr:** metamark space |
| **Note** | This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the `<floatingText>` is provided for this purpose. |
| **Example** | `<text> <front> <docTitle> <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart> </docTitle> </front> <body> <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l> <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l> </body> </text>` |
| **Example** | The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:<br>`<text> <front> <!-- front matter for the whole group --> </front> <group> <text> <!-- first text --> </text> <text> <!-- second text --> </text> </group> </text>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><sequence><br><classRef key="model.global"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><sequence minOccurs="0"><br><elementRef key="front"/><br><classRef key="model.global"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br><alternate><br><elementRef key="body"/><br><elementRef key="group"/><br></alternate><br><classRef key="model.global"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><sequence minOccurs="0"><br><elementRef key="back"/><br><classRef key="model.global"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br></sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element text<br>{<br>att.global.attributes,<br>att.declaring.attributes,<br>att.typed.attributes,<br>att.written.attributes,<br>(<br>model.global*,<br>( front, model.global* )?,<br>( body \| group ),<br>model.global*,<br>( back, model.global* )?<br>)<br>} |

### *5.1.101. <textClass>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<textClass>** (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3. The Text Classification] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** catRef keywords |
| **Example** | <taxonomy><br><category xml:id="acprose"><br><catDesc>Academic prose</catDesc><br></category><br><!-- other categories here --><br></taxonomy><br><!-- ... --><br><textClass><br><catRef target="#acprose"/><br><classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</classCode><br><keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov"><br><list><br><item>End of the world</item><br><item>History - philosophy</item><br></list><br></keywords><br></textClass> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><elementRef key="classCode"/><br><elementRef key="catRef"/><br><elementRef key="keywords"/><br></alternate><br></content> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | `element textClass { att.global.attributes, att.declarable.attributes, ( classCode \| catRef \| keywords )* }` |

## *5.1.102. <textLang>*

**<textLang>** (text language) describes the languages and writing systems identified within the bibliographic work being described, rather than its description. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 10.6.6. Languages and Writing Systems]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))<br>mainLang — (main language) supplies a code which identifies the chief language used in the bibliographic work.<br>**Status** Required<br>**Datatype** teidata.language<br>otherLangs — (other languages) one or more codes identifying any other languages used in the bibliographic work.<br>**Status** Recommended<br>**Datatype** 0–# occurrences of teidata.language separated by white-space |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num p pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | This element should not be used to document the languages or writing systems used for the bibliographic or manuscript description itself: as for all other TEI elements, such information should be provided by means of the global *xml:lang* attribute attached to the element containing the description.<br>In all cases, languages should be identified by means of a standardized ‘language tag’ generated according to BCP 47. Additional documentation for the language may be provided by a <language> element in the TEI header. |
| **Example** | `<textLang mainLang="en" otherLangs="la"> Predominantly in English with Latin glosses</textLang>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element textLang { att.global.attributes, attribute mainLang { text }, attribute otherLangs { list { * } }?, macro.specialPara }` |

## *5.1.103. <title>*

**<title>** (title) contains a title for any kind of work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (type, @subtype)<br>type — classifies the title according to some convenient typology.<br>**Derived from:** att.typed<br>**Status:** Optional<br>**Datatype:** teidata.enumerated<br>**Sample values include:**<br>**main** — main title<br>**sub** — (subordinate) subtitle, title of part<br>**alt** — (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known<br>**short** — abbreviated form of title<br>**desc** — (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title<br>**Note:** This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.<br>level — indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.<br>**Status:** Optional<br>**Datatype:** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:**<br>**a** — (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.<br>**m** — (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works<br>**j** — (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper<br>**s** — (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection<br>**u** |

| | |
|---|---|
| | (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)<br>**Note** The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an `<analytic>` element is *ipso facto* of level 'a', and one appearing within a `<series>` element of level 's'. For this reason, the *level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element. |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del desc distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref resp rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** authority change creation language licence principal seriesStmt titleStmt<br>**msdescription:** collection institution origDate origPlace repository stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | The attributes *key* and *ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title. |
| **Example** | `<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK, 18–21 July 1989</title>` |
| **Example** | `<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition</title>` |
| **Example** | `<title type="full"> <title type="main">Synthèse</title> <title type="sub">an international journal for epistemology, methodology and history of science</title> </title>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element title { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, att.canonical.attributes, att.datable.attributes, attribute type { text }?, attribute level { "a" \| "m" \| "j" \| "s" \| "u" }?, macro.paraContent }` |

## *5.1.104. <titleStmt>*

**<titleStmt>** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** author respStmt title<br>**header:** principal |
| **Example** | `<titleStmt>`<br>` <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</title>`<br>` <respStmt>`<br>`  <resp>compiled by</resp>`<br>`  <name>P.J. Lucas</name>`<br>` </respStmt>`<br>`</titleStmt>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <sequence>`<br>`  <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"`<br>`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`  <classRef key="model.respLike"`<br>`  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>` </sequence>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, ( title+, model.respLike* ) }` |

### *5.1.105. <unclear>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<unclear>** (unclear) contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text 3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))<br>reason — indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.<br>**Status** Required<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace<br>**Sample values include** **illegible** (illegible); **faded** (faded)<br>`<div>`<br>` <head>Rx</head>`<br>` <p>500 mg <unclear reason="illegible">placebo</unclear>`<br>` </p>`<br>`</div>`<br>**Note** One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause.<br>agent — Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Sample values include:** **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges; **mildew** |

| | |
|---|---|
| | damage results from mildew on the leaf surface<br>**smoke**<br>damage results from smoke |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **core:** abbr addrLine author date del distinct foreign head hi item label name note num p q ref rs street term textLang title unclear<br>**figures:** cell<br>**header:** change licence<br>**msdescription:** origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation birth country death forename nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName settlement sex surname<br>**textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed<br>**transcr:** metamark |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl date del desc distinct foreign hi label lb list name note num pb q ref rs term title unclear<br>**figures:** table<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** msDesc origDate origPlace stamp<br>**namesdates:** affiliation country forename geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** metamark space<br>character data |
| **Note** | The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility.<br>The `<damage>`, `<gap>`, <del>, <unclear> and `<supplied>` elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.<br>The *hand* attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section 11.3.2.1. Document Hands. |
| **Example** | `<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said ... </u>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element unclear`<br>`{`<br>`  att.global.attributes,`<br>`  att.editLike.attributes,`<br>`  att.dimensions.attributes,`<br>`  attribute reason { list { + } },`<br>`  attribute agent { text }?,`<br>`  macro.paraContent`<br>`}` |

# 5.2. Model classes

## *5.2.1. model.addrPart*

| | |
|---|---|
| **model.addrPart** groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.6.2. Addresses] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | address |
| **Members** | model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName settlement] location] idno rs] addrLine postCode street |

## *5.2.2. model.addressLike*

| |
|---|
| **model.addressLike** groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1. The TEI Infrastructure] |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | location model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | address affiliation |

### *5.2.3. model.attributable*

| **model.attributable** groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.2. Floating Texts] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.phraseSeq model.inter |
| **Members** | model.quoteLike |

### *5.2.4. model.availabilityPart*

| **model.availabilityPart** groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | availability |
| **Members** | licence |

### *5.2.5. model.biblLike*

| **model.biblLike** groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | event location model.inter model.personPart org place |
| **Members** | bibl msDesc |

### *5.2.6. model.common*

| **model.common** groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | div postscript |
| **Members** | model.divPart[model.lLike model.pLike[p]] model.inter[model.attributable[model.quoteLike] model.biblLike[bibl msDesc] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace table] model.oddDecl model.stageLike] q |
| **Note** | This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions. |

### *5.2.7. model.dateLike*

| **model.dateLike** groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | date |

### *5.2.8. model.descLike*

| **model.descLike** groups elements which contain a description of their function. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | space |
| **Members** | desc |

### *5.2.9. model.divBottom*

| **model.divBottom** groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions] |
|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | div list table |
| **Members** | model.divBottomPart[closer postscript signed] model.divWrapper[byline dateline salute] |

### *5.2.10. model.divBottomPart*

| **model.divBottomPart** groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.divBottom postscript |
| **Members** | closer postscript signed |

### *5.2.11. model.divLike*

| **model.divLike** groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | div |
| **Members** | div |

### *5.2.12. model.divPart*

| **model.divPart** groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.specialPara model.common |
| **Members** | model.lLike model.pLike[p] |
| **Note** | Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items. |

### *5.2.13. model.divTop*

| **model.divTop** groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | div list |
| **Members** | model.divTopPart[model.headLike[head] opener signed] model.divWrapper[byline dateline salute] |

### *5.2.14. model.divTopPart*

| **model.divTopPart** groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.divTop postscript |
| **Members** | model.headLike[head] opener signed |

### *5.2.15. model.divWrapper*

| **model.divWrapper** groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.divBottom model.divTop |
| **Members** | byline dateline salute |

### *5.2.16. model.emphLike*

| **model.emphLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Used by** | model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase |
| **Members** | distinct foreign term title |

### *5.2.17. model.encodingDescPart*

| **model.encodingDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | encodingDesc |
| **Members** | projectDesc |

### *5.2.18. model.eventLike*

| **model.eventLike** groups elements which describe events. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listEvent model.orgPart model.personPart place |
| **Members** | event listEvent |

### *5.2.19. model.global*

| **model.global** groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | address byline closer date dateline div head list macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara model.paraPart opener origDate person postscript table text |
| **Members** | model.global.edit[space] model.global.meta model.milestoneLike[lb pb] model.note-Like[note] metamark |

### *5.2.20. model.global.edit*

| **model.global.edit** groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.global |
| **Members** | space |

### *5.2.21. model.headLike*

| **model.headLike** groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | event listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace model.divTopPart msDesc org place table |
| **Members** | head |

### *5.2.22. model.hiLike*

| **model.hiLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase |
| **Members** | hi q |

### *5.2.23. model.highlighted*

| **model.highlighted** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.emphLike[distinct foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi q] |

### *5.2.24. model.inter*

| **model.inter** groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | head macro.limitedContent macro.specialPara model.common model.paraPart |
| **Members** | model.attributable[model.quoteLike] model.biblLike[bibl msDesc] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace table] model.oddDecl model.stageLike |

### *5.2.25. model.labelLike*

| **model.labelLike** groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | event location model.inter org place |
| **Members** | desc label |

### *5.2.26. model.limitedPhrase*

| **model.limitedPhrase** groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | creation macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited |
| **Members** | model.emphLike[distinct foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi q] model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address affiliation] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike[geo num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName settlement] location] idno rs]] model.pPart.editorial[abbr] model.pPart.msdesc[origDate origPlace stamp] model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ref] |

### *5.2.27. model.listLike*

| **model.listLike** groups list-like elements. [3.8. Lists] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | abstract model.inter |
| **Members** | list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace table |

### *5.2.28. model.measureLike*

| **model.measureLike** groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | location model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | geo num |

### *5.2.29. model.milestoneLike*

| **model.milestoneLike** groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System 3.11.3. Milestone Elements] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.global org |
| **Members** | lb pb |

### *5.2.30. model.nameLike*

| **model.nameLike** groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Used by** | model.addrPart model.pPart.data org |
| **Members** | model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName settlement] location] idno rs |
| **Note** | A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc. |

### *5.2.31. model.nameLike.agent*

| **model.nameLike.agent** groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike respStmt |
| **Members** | name orgName persName |
| **Note** | This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations. |

### *5.2.32. model.noteLike*

| **model.noteLike** groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | event location model.global org place |
| **Members** | note |

### *5.2.33. model.orgPart*

| **model.orgPart** groups elements which form part of the description of an organization. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | org |
| **Members** | model.eventLike[event listEvent] listOrg listPerson listPlace |

### *5.2.34. model.pLike*

| **model.pLike** groups paragraph-like elements. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | abstract availability encodingDesc event langUsage model.divPart msDesc org person physDesc place projectDesc publicationStmt seriesStmt |
| **Members** | p |

### *5.2.35. model.pPart.data*

| **model.pPart.data** groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.limitedPhrase model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.addressLike[address affiliation] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike[geo num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName settlement] location] idno rs] |

### *5.2.36. model.pPart.edit*

| **model.pPart.edit** groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.phrase |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Members** | model.pPart.editorial[abbr] model.pPart.transcriptional[del unclear] |

### *5.2.37. model.pPart.editorial*

| **model.pPart.editorial** groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit |
| **Members** | abbr |

### *5.2.38. model.pPart.msdesc*

| **model.pPart.msdesc** groups phrase-level elements used in manuscript description. [10. Manuscript Description] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.limitedPhrase model.phrase |
| **Members** | origDate origPlace stamp |

### *5.2.39. model.pPart.transcriptional*

| **model.pPart.transcriptional** groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.pPart.edit |
| **Members** | del unclear |

### *5.2.40. model.paraPart*

| **model.paraPart** groups elements that may appear in paragraphs and similar elements [3.1. Paragraphs] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.paraContent |
| **Members** | model.gLike model.global[model.global.edit[space] model.global.meta model.milestoneLike[lb pb] model.noteLike[note] metamark] model.inter[model.attributable[model.quoteLike] model.biblLike[bibl msDesc] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace table] model.oddDecl model.stageLike] model.lLike model.phrase[model.graphicLike model.highlighted[model.emphLike[distinct foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi q]] model.lPart model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address affiliation] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike[geo num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName settlement] location] idno rs]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[abbr] model.pPart.transcriptional[del unclear]] model.pPart.msdesc[origDate origPlace stamp] model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ref] model.segLike model.specDescLike] |

### *5.2.41. model.persNamePart*

| **model.persNamePart** groups elements which form part of a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike |
| **Members** | forename nameLink surname |

### *5.2.42. model.persStateLike*

| **model.persStateLike** groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.personPart |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Members** | affiliation nationality occupation persName sex |
| **Note** | These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others. |

### *5.2.43. model.personLike*

| **model.personLike** groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listPerson org |
| **Members** | org person |

### *5.2.44. model.personPart*

| **model.personPart** groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [15.2.2. The Participant Description] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | person |
| **Members** | model.biblLike[bibl msDesc] model.eventLike[event listEvent] model.persStateLike[affiliation nationality occupation persName sex] birth death idno name |

### *5.2.45. model.phrase*

| **model.phrase** groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | byline closer date dateline head macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara model.paraPart opener origDate |
| **Members** | model.graphicLike model.highlighted[model.emphLike[distinct foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi q]] model.lPart model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address affiliation] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike[geo num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName settlement] location] idnors]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[abbr] model.pPart.transcriptional[del unclear]] model.pPart.msdesc[origDate origPlace stamp] model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ref] model.segLike model.specDescLike |
| **Note** | This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc. |

### *5.2.46. model.placeLike*

| **model.placeLike** groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listPlace org place |
| **Members** | place |

### *5.2.47. model.placeNamePart*

| **model.placeNamePart** groups elements which form part of a place name. [13.2.3. Place Names] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | location model.placeStateLike msIdentifier |
| **Members** | country placeName settlement |

### *5.2.48. model.placeStateLike*

| **model.placeStateLike** groups elements which describe changing states of a place. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike place |
| **Members** | model.placeNamePart[country placeName settlement] location |

### 5.2.49. model.profileDescPart

| **model.profileDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | profileDesc |
| **Members** | abstract creation langUsage textClass |

### 5.2.50. model.ptrLike

| **model.ptrLike** groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.limitedPhrase model.phrase model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Members** | ref |

### 5.2.51. model.publicationStmtPart.agency

| **model.publicationStmtPart.agency** groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | authority |
| **Note** | The 'agency' child elements, while not required, are required if one of the 'detail' child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a 'detail' child element without a preceding 'agency' child element.<br>See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail. |

### 5.2.52. model.publicationStmtPart.detail

| **model.publicationStmtPart.detail** groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | model.ptrLike[ref] address availability date idno |
| **Note** | A 'detail' child element may not occur unless an 'agency' child element precedes it.<br>See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency. |

### 5.2.53. model.resource

| **model.resource** groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | TEI |
| **Members** | text |

### 5.2.54. model.respLike

| **model.respLike** groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | titleStmt |
| **Members** | author principal respStmt |

### 5.2.55. model.teiHeaderPart

| **model.teiHeaderPart** groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Used by** | teiHeader |
| **Members** | encodingDesc profileDesc |

# 5.3. Attribute classes

## *5.3.1. att.anchoring*

**att.anchoring** (anchoring) provides attributes for use on annotations, e.g. notes and groups of notes describing the existence and position of an anchor for annotations.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Module** | tei | |
| **Members** | note | |
| **Attributes** | anchored | (anchored) indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.truthValue<br>**Default** true<br>**Note** In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. ‘page 218, lines 3–4’). The *anchored* attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the *n* attribute. |
| | targetEnd | (target end) points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space<br>**Note** This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in 16.2.4.6. range(). |
| **Example** | | (...) tamen reuerendos dominos archiepiscopum et canonicos Leopolienses<br>necnon episcopum in duplicibus Quatuortemporibus<anchor xml:id="A55234"/> totaliter expediui... <br><!-- elsewhere in the document --><br><noteGrp targetEnd="#A55234"><br><note xml:lang="en"> Quatuor Tempora, so called dry fast days.<br></note><br><note xml:lang="pl"> Quatuor Tempora, tzw. Suche dni postne.<br></note><br></noteGrp> |

## *5.3.2. att.ascribed*

**att.ascribed** provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Module** | tei | |
| **Members** | att.ascribed.directed[q] change | |
| **Attributes** | who | indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space |

In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the *who* attribute.

```
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>
 <roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp who="#Barnardo">
 <speaker>Bernardo</speaker>
 <l n="1">Who's there?</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#Francisco">
 <speaker>Francisco</speaker>
 <l n="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</l>
</sp>
```

**Note** For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

### *5.3.3. att.ascribed.directed*

**att.ascribed.directed** provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be directed at a group or individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | q |
| **Attributes** | att.ascribed (@who) |

toWhom — indicates the person, or group of people, to whom a speech act or action is directed.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space

In the following example from Mary Pix's The False Friend, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the *toWhom* attribute, which is used to specify who the speech is directed to. Additionally, the <stage> includes *toWhom* to indicate the directionality of the action.

```
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="emil">Emilius.</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="lov">Lovisa</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="serv">A servant</role>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp who="#emil"
 toWhom="#lov">
 <speaker>Emil.</speaker>
 <l n="1">My love!</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#lov"
 toWhom="#emil">
 <speaker>Lov.</speaker>
 <l n="2">I have no Witness of my Noble Birth</l>
 <stage who="emil"
  toWhom="#serv">Pointing to her Woman.</stage>
 <l>But that poor helpless wretch—–</l>
</sp>
```

**Note** To indicate the recipient of written correspondence, use the elements used in section 2.4.6. Correspondence Description, rather than a *toWhom* attribute.

### *5.3.4. att.breaking*

**att.breaking** provides attributes to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | lb pb |
| **Attributes** | break — indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.<br>**Status** Recommended<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Sample values include**<br>**yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace<br>**no** the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace<br>**maybe** the encoding does not take any position on this issue.<br>In the following lines from the 'Dream of the Rood', linebreaks occur in the middle of the words *l#ðost* and *reord-berendum*.<br>`<ab> ...e#esa tome iu ic#æs #e#orden #ita heardo#t . leodum la<lb break="no"/> ðost ærþan ichim lifes #e# rihtne #erymde reord be<lb break="no"/> rendum h#æt me þa#e#eorðode #uldres ealdor ofer... </ab>` |

### *5.3.5. att.cReferencing*

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.cReferencing** provides attributes that may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | ref term |
| **Attributes** | cRef — (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a `<refsDecl>` element in the TEI header<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.text<br>**Note** The value of *cRef* should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target.<br>The `<refsDecl>` to use may be indicated with the *decls* attribute.<br>Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given `<ptr>` element. |

### *5.3.6. att.canonical*

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.canonical** provides attributes that can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents] | |
| **Module** | tei |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Members** | att.naming[att.personal[forename name orgName persName placeName surname] affiliation author birth collection country death event institution nationality occupation origPlace repository rs settlement] authority date principal resp respStmt term title |
| **Attributes** | key — provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.text<br>`<author> <name key="name 427308" type="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]</name> </author>`<br>`<author> <name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)" ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</name> </author>`<br>**Note** The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent. No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the *key* attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a *ref* attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in RFC 4151.<br>ref — (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space<br>`<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338" type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>`<br>**Note** The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities. |

### *5.3.7. att.datable*

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.datable** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | affiliation author birth change country creation date death event idno licence location name nationality occupation orgName origDate origPlace persName placeName principal resp settlement sex stamp title |
| **Attributes** | att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)<br>calendar — indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space<br>**Schematron** <sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]"> <sch:assert test="string-length( normalize-space(.) ) gt 0"> @calendar indicates one or more systems or calendars |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert> </sch:rule><br>`He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date> (<date calendar="#julian" when="1732-02-22">Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date>).`<br>`He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian #julian" when="1732-02-22">Feb. 22, 1732 (Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.)</date>.`<br>**Note** Note that the *calendar* attribute (unlike *datingMethod* defined in att.datable.custom) defines the calendar system of the date in the original material defined by the parent element, *not* the calendar to which the date is normalized. |
| | period | supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time (typically `<category>`s or `<calendar>`s) within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace |
| **Note** | This 'superclass' provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.datable.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.datable.iso and att.datable.custom classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes. | |

### *5.3.8. att.datable.custom*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **att.datable.custom** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [13.4. Dates] | | |
| **Module** | namesdates | |
| **Members** | att.datable[affiliation author birth change country creation date death event idno licence location name nationality occupation orgName origDate origPlace persName placeName principal resp settlement sex stamp title] | |
| **Attributes** | when-custom | supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace<br>The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are *not* valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system<br>`<p>Alhazen died in Cairo on the <date when="1040-03-06" when-custom="431-06-12"> 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430 AH </date>.</p> <p>The current world will end at the <date when="2012-12-21" when-custom="13.0.0.0.0">end of B'ak'tun 13</date>.</p> <p>The Battle of Meggidu (<date when-custom="Thutmose_III:23">23rd year of reign of Thutmose III</date>).</p> <p>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub <date when-custom="Ind:4-10-11">die XI mensis Octobris indictione IIII</date> </p>`<br>Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents.The *when-custom* attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats. |
| | notBefore-custom | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.<br>**Status** Optional |

**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

notAfter-custom specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

from-custom indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

```
<event xml:id="FIRE1"
 datingMethod="#julian"
 from-custom="1666-09-02"
 to-custom="1666-09-05">
 <head>The Great Fire of London</head>
 <p>The Great Fire of London burned through a large part
   of the city of London.</p>
</event>
```

to-custom indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

datingPoint supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.pointer

datingMethod supplies a pointer to a `<calendar>` element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.pointer

```
Contayning the Originall, Antiquity, Increa#e, Moderne
 e#tate, and de#cription of that Citie, written in the yeare
<date when-custom="1598"
 calendar="#julian"
 datingMethod="#julian">1598</date>. by Iohn Stow
 Citizen of London.
```

In this example, the *calendar* attribute points to a `<calendar>` element for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the <date> element is a Julian date, and the *datingMethod* attribute also points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the *when-custom* attribute value is Julian too.

```
<date when="1382-06-28"
 when-custom="6890-06-20"
 datingMethod="#creationOfWorld"> μ### ####### ### <num>#</num> ##### <num>###</num>
</date>
```

In this example, a date is given in a Mediaeval text measured ‘from the creation of the world’, which is normalized (in *when*) to the Gregorian date, but is also normalized (in *when-custom*) to a machine-actionable, numeric version of the date from the Creation.

**Note** Note that the *datingMethod* attribute (unlike *calendar* defined in att.datable) defines the calendar or dating system to which the date described by the parent element is normalized (i.e. in the *when-custom* or other *X-custom* attributes), *not* the calendar of the original date in the element.

### *5.3.9. att.datable.iso*

| **att.datable.iso** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601:2004 standard. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Members** | att.datable[affiliation author birth change country creation date death event idno licence location name nationality occupation orgName origDate origPlace persName placeName principal resp settlement sex stamp title] |
| **Attributes** | when-iso — supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso<br>The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are *not* valid W3C format normalizations.<br>`<date when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>`<br>`<date when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>`<br>`<time when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>`<br>`<time when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>`<br>`<date when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</dat`<br>`<time when-iso="03:00">3 A.M.</time>`<br>`<time when-iso="14">around two</time>`<br>`<time when-iso="15,5">half past three</time>`<br>All of the examples of the *when* attribute in the att.datable.w3c class are also valid with respect to this attribute.<br>`He likes to be punctual. I said <q>`<br>`<time when-iso="12">around noon</time>`<br>`</q>, and he showed up at <time when-iso="12:00:00">12 O'clock</time> on the dot.`<br>The second occurence of `<time>` could have been encoded with the *when* attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification. The first occurence could not.<br>notBefore-iso — specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso<br>notAfter-iso — specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso<br>from-iso — indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso<br>to-iso — indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso |
| **Note** | The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601:2004, using the Gregorian calendar.<br>If both *when-iso* and *dur-iso* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,<br>`<date when-iso="2007-06-01" dur-iso="P8D"/>`<br>indicates the same time period as<br>`<date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/>`<br>In providing a 'regularized' form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading. |

### *5.3.10. att.datable.w3c*

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.datable.w3c** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates] | |
| **Module** | tei |

**Members**

att.datable[affiliation author birth change country creation date death event idno licence location name nationality occupation orgName origDate origPlace persName placeName principal resp settlement sex stamp title]

**Attributes**

when — supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.

```
<p>
 <date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
 <date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
 <time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>
 <time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
 <date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
 <date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
 <date when="---01">the first of the month</date>
 <date when="--08">August</date>
 <date when="2006">MMVI</date>
 <date when="0056">AD 56</date>
 <date when="-0056">56 BC</date>
</p>
```

```
This list begins in
 the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after
 Pentecost, in that year the
<date calendar="#julian"
 when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.
```

```
<opener>
 <dateline>
  <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
  <date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
 </dateline>
 <salute>To
   Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time when="12:00:00">noon.</time>
</opener>
```

notBefore — specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c

notAfter — specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c

from — indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c

to — indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c

**Schematron**

<sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to" role="nonfatal">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

**Schematron**

<sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore" role="nonfatal">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

**Schematron**

<sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]"> <sch:report test="@notAfter" role="nonfatal">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

**Example**

```
<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Note** | The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition, using the Gregorian calendar.<br>The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is `yyyy-mm-dd`, but `yyyy`, `--mm`, `---dd`, `yyyy-mm`, or `--mm-dd` may also be used. For the time part, the form `hh:mm:ss` is used.<br>Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used. |

### *5.3.11. att.declarable*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **att.declarable** provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *decls* attribute. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text] | | |
| **Module** | tei | |
| **Members** | availability bibl langUsage listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace projectDesc seriesStmt sourceDesc textClass | |
| **Attributes** | default | indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.truthValue<br>**Legal values are:** **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected<br>**false** This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default] |
| **Note** | The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text. Only one element of a particular type may have a *default* attribute with a value of true. | |

### *5.3.12. att.declaring*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **att.declaring** provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text] | | |
| **Module** | tei | |
| **Members** | body div geo msDesc p ref term text | |
| **Attributes** | decls | (declarations) identifies one or more *declarable elements* within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space |
| **Note** | The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text. | |

### *5.3.13. att.dimensions*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **att.dimensions** provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects. | | |
| **Module** | tei | |
| **Members** | birth date death del origDate space unclear | |
| **Attributes** | att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) | |
| | unit | names the unit used for the measurement<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | **Suggested values include:** | **cm** (centimetres)<br>**mm** (millimetres)<br>**in** (inches)<br>**line** lines of text<br>**char** (characters) characters of text |
| quantity | specifies the length in the units specified | |
| | **Status** | Optional |
| | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric |
| extent | indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words. | |
| | **Status** | Optional |
| | **Datatype** | teidata.text |
| | `<gap extent="5 words"/>`<br>`<height extent="half the page"/>` | |
| precision | characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes. | |
| | **Status** | Optional |
| | **Datatype** | teidata.certainty |
| scope | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement. | |
| | **Status** | Optional |
| | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated |
| | **Sample values include:** | **all** measurement applies to all instances.<br>**most** measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.<br>**range** measurement applies to only the specified range of instances. |

### *5.3.14. att.divLike*

**att.divLike** provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [4. Default Text Structure]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | div |
| **Attributes** | att.fragmentable (@part) |
| | org (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized. |
| | **Status** Optional |
| | **Datatype** teidata.enumerated |
| | **Legal values are:** **composite** no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | **uniform** the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.[Default] |
| | sample | indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **initial** division lacks material present at end in source.<br>**medial** division lacks material at start and end.<br>**final** division lacks material at start.<br>**unknown** position of sampled material within original unknown.<br>**complete** division is not a sample.[Default] |

### *5.3.15. att.docStatus*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **att.docStatus** provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document. | | |
| **Module** | tei | |
| **Members** | bibl change msDesc revisionDesc | |
| **Attributes** | status | describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Sample values include:** **approved**<br>**candidate**<br>**cleared**<br>**deprecated**<br>**draft** [Default]<br>**embargoed**<br>**expired**<br>**frozen**<br>**galley**<br>**proposed** |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **published**<br>**recommendation**<br>**submitted**<br>**unfinished**<br>**withdrawn** |
| **Example** | `<revisionDesc status="published">`<br>`<change when="2010-10-21"`<br>`status="published"/>`<br>`<change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/>`<br>`<change when="2010-08-02"`<br>`status="embargoed"/>`<br>`<change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen"`<br>`who="#MSM"/>`<br>`<change when="2010-03-01" status="draft"`<br>`who="#LB"/>`<br>`</revisionDesc>` |

### *5.3.16. att.editLike*

**att.editLike** provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 10.3.1. Origination 13.3.2. The Person Element 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.transcriptional[del] affiliation birth date death event location name nationality occupation org orgName origDate origPlace persName person place placeName sex unclear |
| **Attributes** | evidence — indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace<br>**Suggested values include:**<br>**internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.<br>**external** there is external evidence to support the intervention.<br>**conjecture** the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.<br>instant — indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.xTruthValue<br>**Default** false |
| **Note** | The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Each pointer on the *source* (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a `<witness>`, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned. |

### *5.3.17. att.edition*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **att.edition** provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives. | | |
| **Module** | tei | |
| **Members** | lb pb | |
| **Attributes** | ed | (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace |
| | edRef | (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace |
| **Example** | | `<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>`<br>`<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>`<br>`<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>` |
| **Example** | | `<listBibl>`<br>` <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">`<br>`  <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,`<br>` <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>, <date>1937</date>`<br>` </bibl>`<br>` <bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">`<br>`  <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,`<br>` <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>, <date>1968</date>`<br>` </bibl>`<br>`</listBibl>`<br>`<!-- ... -->`<br>`<p>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of`<br>` the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their`<br>` strength maintaining the<pb n="411" edRef="#stapledon1968"/>essentials of their ancient culture,`<br>` still living their personal lives in zest and endless`<br>` novelty of action, … I saw myself still`<br>` preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid`<br>` con-<pb n="291" edRef="#stapledon1937"/>sciousness;</p>` |

### *5.3.18. att.fragmentable*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **att.fragmentable** provides attributes for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy. | | |
| **Module** | tei | |
| **Members** | att.divLike[div] p | |
| **Attributes** | part | specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect<br>**N** (no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness[Default] |

**I**
(initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element

**M**
(medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element

**F**
(final) this is the final part of a fragmented element

**Note** The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

### *5.3.19. att.global*

**att.global** provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1. Global Attributes]

**Module** tei

**Members** TEI abbr abstract addrLine address affiliation author authority availability bibl birth body byline catRef cell change closer collection country creation date dateline death del desc distinct div encodingDesc event fileDesc foreign forename geo head hi idno institution item keywords label langUsage language lb licence list listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location metamark msDesc msIdentifier name nameLink nationality note num occupation opener org orgName origDate origPlace p pb persName person physDesc place placeName postCode postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc publicationStmt q ref repository resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs salute seriesStmt settlement sex signed sourceDesc space stamp street surname table teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt unclear

**Attributes** att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** ID

**Note** The *xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.11. Reference Systems.

n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.text

**Note** The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a ‘tag’ generated according to BCP 47.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.language

```
<p> … The consequences of
 this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last
<foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki</foreign> or chief
 (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to
 ancestral territorial organization.</p>
```

**Note** The *xml:lang* value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to

specify *xml:lang* at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the <teiHeader> from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.

Only attributes with free text values (rare in these guidelines) will be in the scope of *xml:lang*.

The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see https://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php.

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their IETFInternet Engineering Task Force definitions.

xml:base — provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.pointer

```
<div type="bibl">
 <head>Selections from <title level="m">The Collected Letters of Robert Southey. Part 1: 17
 </head>
 <listBibl xml:base="https://romantic-circles.org/sites/default/files/imported/editions/sou
  <bibl>
   <ref target="letterEEd.26.3.xml">
    <title>Robert Southey to Grosvenor Charles Bedford</title>, <date when="1792-04-03">3 A
   </ref>
  </bibl>
  <bibl>
   <ref target="letterEEd.26.57.xml">
    <title>Robert Southey to Anna Seward</title>, <date when="1793-09-18">18 September 1793
   </ref>
  </bibl>
  <bibl>
   <ref target="letterEEd.26.85.xml">
    <title>Robert Southey to Robert Lovell</title>, <date from="1794-04-05"
     to="1794-04-06">5-6 April, 1794</date>.
   </ref>
  </bibl>
 </listBibl>
</div>
```

xml:space — signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

**Legal values are:**

**default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable

**preserve** indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space

**Note** The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.

## *5.3.20. att.global.change*

**att.global.change** provides attributes allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated.

| **Module** | transcr |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| **Members** | att.global[TEI abbr abstract addrLine address affiliation author authority availability bibl birth body byline catRef cell change closer collection country creation date dateline death del desc distinct div encodingDesc event fileDesc foreign forename geo head hi idno institution item keywords label langUsage language lb licence list listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location metamark msDesc msIdentifier name nameLink nationality note num occupation opener org orgName origDate origPlace p pb persName person physDesc place placeName postCode postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc publicationStmt q ref repository resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs salute seriesStmt settlement sex signed sourceDesc space stamp street surname table teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt unclear] |
| **Attributes** | change — points to one or more <change> elements documenting a state or revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its children have been assigned by the encoder.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space |

### *5.3.21. att.global.facs*

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.global.facs** provides attributes used to express correspondence between an element and all or part of a facsimile image or surface. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Members** | att.global[TEI abbr abstract addrLine address affiliation author authority availability bibl birth body byline catRef cell change closer collection country creation date dateline death del desc distinct div encodingDesc event fileDesc foreign forename geo head hi idno institution item keywords label langUsage language lb licence list listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location metamark msDesc msIdentifier name nameLink nationality note num occupation opener org orgName origDate origPlace p pb persName person physDesc place placeName postCode postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc publicationStmt q ref repository resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs salute seriesStmt settlement sex signed sourceDesc space stamp street surname table teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt unclear] |
| **Attributes** | facs — (facsimile) points to one or more images, portions of an image, or surfaces which correspond to the current element.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space |

### *5.3.22. att.global.rendition*

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.global.rendition** provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.global[TEI abbr abstract addrLine address affiliation author authority availability bibl birth body byline catRef cell change closer collection country creation date dateline death del desc distinct div encodingDesc event fileDesc foreign forename geo head hi idno institution item keywords label langUsage language lb licence list listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location metamark msDesc msIdentifier name nameLink nationality note num occupation opener org orgName origDate origPlace p pb persName person physDesc place placeName postCode postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc publicationStmt q ref repository resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs salute seriesStmt settlement sex signed sourceDesc space stamp street surname table teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt unclear] |
| **Attributes** | rend — (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text. |

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

```
<head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle,
<lb/>On Her <lb/>
 <hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

**Note** These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the *rend* attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the *rend* attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.

style contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.text

```
<head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her
<lb/>
 <hi style="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

**Note** Unlike the attribute values of *rend*, which uses whitespace as a separator, the *style* attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output.

The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the `<styleDefDecl>` element in the TEI header.

If *style* and *rendition* are both present on an element, then *style* overrides or complements *rendition*. *style* should not be used in conjunction with *rend*, because the latter does not employ a formal style definition language.

rendition points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```
<head rendition="#ac #sc">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her
<lb/>
 <hi rendition="#normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
<!-- elsewhere... -->
<rendition xml:id="sc"
 scheme="css">font-variant: small-caps</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="normal"
 scheme="css">font-variant: normal</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="ac"
 scheme="css">text-align: center</rendition>
```

**Note** The *rendition* attribute is used in a very similar way to the *class* attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.

If *rendition* is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with *rend*. Where both *rendition* and *rend* are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.

Each URI provided should indicate a `<rendition>` element defining the intended rendition in terms of some

| | |
|---|---|
| | appropriate style language, as indicated by the *scheme* attribute. |

### *5.3.23. att.global.responsibility*

**att.global.responsibility** provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 17.3. Spans and Interpretations 13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.global[TEI abbr abstract addrLine address affiliation author authority availability bibl birth body byline catRef cell change closer collection country creation date dateline death del desc distinct div encodingDesc event fileDesc foreign forename geo head hi idno institution item keywords label langUsage language lb licence list listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location metamark msDesc msIdentifier name nameLink nationality note num occupation opener org orgName origDate origPlace p pb persName person physDesc place placeName postCode postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc publicationStmt q ref repository resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs salute seriesStmt settlement sex signed sourceDesc space stamp street surname table teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt unclear] |
| **Attributes** | cert — (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.probCert<br><br>resp — (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space<br>**Note** To reduce the ambiguity of a *resp* pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that *resp* be used to point not to an agent (<person> or <org>) but to a <respStmt>, <author>, `<editor>` or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.). |
| **Example** | `Blessed are the`<br>`<choice>`<br>` <sic>cheesemakers</sic>`<br>` <corr resp="#editor" cert="high">peacemakers</corr>`<br>`</choice>: for they shall be called the children of God.` |
| **Example** | `<!-- in the <text> ... --><lg>`<br>`<!-- ... -->`<br>` <l>Punkes, Panders, ba#e extortionizing`<br>`  sla<choice>`<br>`  <sic>n</sic>`<br>`  <corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u</corr>`<br>`  </choice>es,</l>`<br>`<!-- ... -->`<br>`</lg>`<br>`<!-- in the <teiHeader> ... -->`<br>`<!-- ... -->`<br>`<respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber">`<br>` <resp when="2014">Transcriber</resp>`<br>` <name>Janelle Jenstad</name>`<br>`</respStmt>` |

### *5.3.24. att.global.source*

**att.global.source** provides attributes used by elements to point to an external source. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |

**Members**

att.global[TEI abbr abstract addrLine address affiliation author authority availability bibl birth body byline catRef cell change closer collection country creation date dateline death del desc distinct div encodingDesc event fileDesc foreign forename geo head hi idno institution item keywords label langUsage language lb licence list listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location metamark msDesc msIdentifier name nameLink nationality note num occupation opener org orgName origDate origPlace p pb persName person physDesc place placeName postCode postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc publicationStmt q ref repository resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs salute seriesStmt settlement sex signed sourceDesc space stamp street surname table teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt unclear]

**Attributes**

source — specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space

**Schematron** <sch:rule context="tei:*[@source]"> <sch:let name="srcs" value="tokenize( normalize-space(@source),' ')"/> <sch:report test="( self::tei:classRef | self::tei:dataRef | self::tei:elementRef | self::tei:macroRef | self::tei:moduleRef | self::tei:schemaSpec ) and $srcs[2]"> When used on a schema description element (like <sch:value-of select="name(.)"/>), the @source attribute should have only 1 value. (This one has <sch:value-of select="count($srcs)"/>.) </sch:report> </sch:rule>

**Note** The *source* attribute points to an external source. When used on an element describing a schema component (`<classRef>`, `<dataRef>`, `<elementRef>`, `<macroRef>`, `<moduleRef>`, or `<schemaSpec>`), it identifies the source from which declarations for the components should be obtained.

On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.

In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, a private scheme URI of the form `tei:x.y.z`, where `x.y.z` indicates the version number, e.g. `tei:4.3.2` for TEI P5 release 4.3.2 or (as a special case) `tei:current` for whatever is the latest release, or a private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a `<prefixDef>`.

When used on elements describing schema components, *source* should have only one value; when used on other elements multiple values are permitted.

**Example**

```
<p>
<!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>) tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">
   term.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
```

**Example**

```
<p>
<!-- ... -->
 <quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the
   less we seem to know.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
<!-- ... -->
<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
 <title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>,
<edition>15th edition</edition>. <pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>: <publisher>University of
   Chicago Press</publisher> (<date>2003</date>), <biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope>.

</bibl>
```

**Example**

```
<elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/>
```

Include in the schema an element named <p> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.

**Example**

```
<schemaSpec ident="myODD"
 source="mycompiledODD.xml">
<!-- further declarations specifying the components required -->
```

```
</schemaSpec>
```

Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml.

### 5.3.25. att.internetMedia

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.internetMedia** provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | ref |
| **Attributes** | mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace |
| **Example** | In this example *mimeType* is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.<br>`<ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8" target="https://raw.githubusercontent.com/TEIC/TEI/dev/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/>` |
| **Note** | This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The *mimeType* attribute must have a value taken from this list. |

### 5.3.26. att.locatable

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.locatable** provides attributes for referencing locations by pointing to entries in a canonical list of places. [2.3.9. The Unit Declaration 13.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | event |
| **Attributes** | where indicates one or more locations by pointing to a <place> element or other canonical description.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace |

### 5.3.27. att.naming

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.naming** provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.6.1. Referring Strings 13.3.6. Names and Nyms] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.personal[forename name orgName persName placeName surname] affiliation author birth collection country death event institution nationality occupation origPlace repository rs settlement |
| **Attributes** | att.canonical (@key, @ref)<br>role may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace<br>nymRef (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.<br>**Status** Optional |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | **Datatype** | 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space |
| | **Note** | The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names. |

### *5.3.28. att.personal*

| **att.personal** (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names] | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Module** | tei | |
| **Members** | forename name orgName persName placeName surname | |
| **Attributes** | att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) | |
| | full | indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial. |
| | | **Status** Optional |
| | | **Datatype** teidata.enumerated |
| | | **Legal values are:** **yes** (yes) the name component is spelled out in full.[Default]<br>**abb** (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.<br>**init** (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial. |
| | sort | (sort) specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name. |
| | | **Status** Optional |
| | | **Datatype** teidata.count |

### *5.3.29. att.placement*

| **att.placement** provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions 11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions] | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Module** | tei | |
| **Members** | head label metamark note | |
| **Attributes** | place | specifies where this item is placed. |
| | | **Status** Recommended |
| | | **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace |
| | | **Suggested values include:** **top** at the top of the page<br>**bottom** at the foot of the page<br>**margin** in the margin (left, right, or both)<br>**opposite** on the opposite, i.e. facing, page |

**over-leaf** on the other side of the leaf

**above** above the line

**right** to the right, e.g. to the right of a vertical line of text, or to the right of a figure

**below** below the line

**left** to the left, e.g. to the left of a vertical line of text, or to the left of a figure

**end** at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.

**in-line** within the body of the text.

**in-space** in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

```
<add place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</add>
<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the
 foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
```

```
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

## *5.3.30. att.pointing*

**att.pointing** provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | catRef licence note ref term |

**Attributes**

targetLang — specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by *target*, using a 'language tag' generated according to BCP 47.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.language

**Schematron** <sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

```
<linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
 <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"
  target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="pl"/>
 <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"
  target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="sw"/>
</linkGrp>
```

In the example above, the `<linkGrp>` combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

**Note** The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | remain consistent with their IETFInternet Engineering Task Force definitions. |
| | target | specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References |
| | | **Status** Optional |
| | | **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space |
| | | **Note** One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`. |
| | evaluate | (evaluate) specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer. |
| | | **Status** Optional |
| | | **Datatype** teidata.enumerated |
| | | **Legal values are:** **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer. |
| | | **one** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer. |
| | | **none** no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target. |
| | | **Note** If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers. |

### *5.3.31. att.ranging*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **att.ranging** provides attributes for describing numerical ranges. | | |
| **Module** | tei | |
| **Members** | att.dimensions[birth date death del origDate space unclear] num | |
| **Attributes** | atLeast | gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement. |
| | | **Status** Optional |
| | | **Datatype** teidata.numeric |
| | atMost | gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement. |
| | | **Status** Optional |
| | | **Datatype** teidata.numeric |
| | min | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed. |
| | | **Status** Optional |
| | | **Datatype** teidata.numeric |
| | max | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed. |
| | | **Status** Optional |
| | | **Datatype** teidata.numeric |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | confidence | specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by *min* and *max*, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.probability |
| **Example** | | `The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <del rend="overstrike"> <gap reason="illegible" extent="one or two letters" atLeast="1" atMost="2" unit="chars"/> </del> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.` |
| **Example** | | `Americares has been supporting the health sector in Eastern Europe since 1986, and since 1992 has provided <measure atLeast="120000000" unit="USD" commodity="currency">more than $120m</measure> in aid to Ukrainians.` |

### *5.3.32. att.sortable*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **att.sortable** provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure] | | |
| **Module** | tei | |
| **Members** | bibl event idno item list listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace msDesc org person place term | |
| **Attributes** | sortKey | supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.word<br>`David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen <index indexName="NAMES"> <term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term> </index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first cousin.`<br>**Note** The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent<br>Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for *4-H* will often appear alphabetized under ‘fourh’, and *McCoy* may be alphabetized under ‘maccoy’, while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in numeric order ‘alphabetized’ between ‘a-’ and ‘AA’. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location. |

### *5.3.33. att.spanning*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **att.spanning** provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions 1.3.1. Attribute Classes] | | |
| **Module** | tei | |
| **Members** | lb metamark pb | |
| **Attributes** | spanTo | indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.pointer<br>**Schematron** The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element <sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]"> <sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">The element indicated by @spanTo (<sch:value-of se- |

| | |
|---|---|
| | lect="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current element <sch:name/> </sch:assert> </sch:rule> |
| **Note** | The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the *spanTo* attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself. |

### *5.3.34. att.tableDecoration*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **att.tableDecoration** provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table. [14. Tables, Formulæ, Graphics, and Notated Music] | | |
| **Module** | figures | |
| **Members** | cell row | |
| **Attributes** | role | (role) indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row. |
| | | **Status** Optional |
| | | **Datatype** teidata.enumerated |
| | | **Suggested values include:** **label** labelling or descriptive information only. **data** data values.[Default] |
| | | **Note** When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the *role* attribute of the parent <row> element. |
| | rows | (rows) indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row. |
| | | **Status** Optional |
| | | **Datatype** teidata.count |
| | | **Default** 1 |
| | | **Note** A value greater than one indicates that this cell spans several rows. Where several cells span multiple rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables. |
| | cols | (columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row. |
| | | **Status** Optional |
| | | **Datatype** teidata.count |
| | | **Default** 1 |
| | | **Note** A value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns. Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading. |

### *5.3.35. att.transcriptional*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **att.transcriptional** provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions] | | |
| **Module** | tei | |
| **Members** | del | |
| **Attributes** | att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.written (@hand) | |
| | status | indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present. |
| | | **Status** Optional |
| | | **Datatype** teidata.enumerated |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | **Sample values include:** | **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.<br>**duplicate-partial** part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original<br>**excessStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.<br>**excessEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.<br>**short-Start** some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.<br>**short-End** some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.<br>**partial** some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.<br>**unremarkable** the deletion is not faulty.[Default] |
| | | **Note** | Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common.<br>Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question. |
| | cause | documents the presumed cause for the intervention. | |
| | | **Status** | Optional |
| | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated |
| | seq | (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred. | |
| | | **Status** | Optional |
| | | **Datatype** | teidata.count |

### *5.3.36. att.typed*

**att.typed** provides attributes that can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes 17.1.1. Words and Above 3.6.1. Referring Strings 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions 3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 7.2.5. Speech Contents 4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions 4.1.2. Numbered Divisions 4.2.1. Headings and Trailers 4.4. Virtual Divisions 13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work 16.1.1. Pointers and Links 16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 12.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text 22.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts 23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Members** | TEI abbr affiliation bibl birth change collection country date death del desc distinct div event forename head idno label lb list listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location msDesc name nameLink nationality note num occupation org orgName origDate origPlace pb persName place placeName ref rs settlement sex space stamp surname table term text title |
| **Attributes** | type — characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>`<div type="verse"> <head>Night in Tarras</head> <lg type="stanza"> <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l> <l>…</l> </lg> <lg type="stanza"> <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l> <l>…</l> </lg> </div>`<br>**Note** The *type* attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.<br>subtype — (subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Note** The *subtype* attribute may be used to provide any subclassification for the element additional to that provided by its *type* attribute. |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule> |
| **Note** | When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the `<valList>` element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists . |

### *5.3.37. att.written*

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.written** provides attributes to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.transcriptional[del] closer div head hi label note opener p postscript salute signed text |
| **Attributes** | hand — points to a `<handNote>` element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.pointer |

## 5.4. Macros

### *5.4.1. macro.limitedContent*

| | |
|---|---|
| **macro.limitedContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | desc |
| **Content model** | `<content> <alternate minOccurs="0"` |

| | |
|---|---|
| | <content><br>  maxOccurs="unbounded"><br>  <textNode/><br>  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/><br>  <classRef key="model.inter"/><br> </alternate><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.limitedContent = ( text \| model.limitedPhrase \| model.inter )* |

### *5.4.2. macro.paraContent*

| | |
|---|---|
| **macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | del hi p ref salute signed title unclear |
| **Content model** | <content><br> <alternate minOccurs="0"<br>  maxOccurs="unbounded"><br>  <textNode/><br>  <classRef key="model.paraPart"/><br> </alternate><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.paraContent = ( text \| model.paraPart )* |

### *5.4.3. macro.phraseSeq*

| | |
|---|---|
| **macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | abbr addrLine affiliation author birth country death distinct foreign forename label name nameLink nationality num orgName origPlace persName placeName rs settlement sex stamp street surname term |
| **Content model** | <content><br> <alternate minOccurs="0"<br>  maxOccurs="unbounded"><br>  <textNode/><br>  <classRef key="model.gLike"/><br>  <classRef key="model.attributable"/><br>  <classRef key="model.phrase"/><br>  <classRef key="model.global"/><br> </alternate><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.phraseSeq =<br>  ( text \| model.gLike \| model.attributable \| model.phrase \| model.global )* |

### *5.4.4. macro.phraseSeq.limited*

| | |
|---|---|
| **macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | authority collection institution language principal repository resp |
| **Content model** | <content><br> <alternate minOccurs="0"<br>  maxOccurs="unbounded"><br>  <textNode/><br>  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/><br>  <classRef key="model.global"/><br> </alternate><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text \| model.limitedPhrase \| model.global )* |

### *5.4.5. macro.specialPara*

| **macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | cell change item licence metamark note occupation q textLang |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><textNode/><br><classRef key="model.gLike"/><br><classRef key="model.phrase"/><br><classRef key="model.inter"/><br><classRef key="model.divPart"/><br><classRef key="model.global"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.specialPara =<br>(<br>text<br>\| model.gLike<br>\| model.phrase<br>\| model.inter<br>\| model.divPart<br>\| model.global<br>)* |

## 5.5. Datatypes

### *5.5.1. teidata.certainty*

| **teidata.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.probCert |
| **Content model** | <content><br><valList type="closed"><br><valItem ident="high"/><br><valItem ident="medium"/><br><valItem ident="low"/><br><valItem ident="unknown"/><br></valList><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.certainty = "high" \| "medium" \| "low" \| "unknown" |
| **Note** | Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter. |

### *5.5.2. teidata.count*

| **teidata.count** defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• table/@rows<br>• table/@cols |
| **Content model** | <content><br><dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger |
| **Note** | Any positive integer value or zero is permitted |

### *5.5.3. teidata.duration.iso*

| **teidata.duration.iso** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | `<content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/> </content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" }` |
| **Example** | `<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>` |
| **Example** | `<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>` |
| **Example** | `<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>` |
| **Example** | `<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>` |
| **Note** | A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either `.` or `,` as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is *0*, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator `T` must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair.<br>For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*. |

### *5.5.4. teidata.duration.w3c*

| **teidata.duration.w3c** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | `<content> <dataRef name="duration"/> </content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration` |
| **Example** | `<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>` |
| **Example** | `<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>` |
| **Example** | `<date dur="P7D">a week</date>` |
| **Example** | `<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>` |
| **Note** | A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the `S` number, which may have a decimal component (using `.` as the decimal point). If any number is *0*, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator `T` must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair.<br>For complete details, see the W3C specification. |

### *5.5.5. teidata.enumerated*

| **teidata.enumerated** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.gender teidata.sexElement: |

| | |
|---|---|
| | • abbr/@type<br>• affiliation/@type<br>• availability/@status<br>• birth/@type<br>• death/@type<br>• desc/@type<br>• distinct/@type<br>• div/@type<br>• idno/@type<br>• list/@type<br>• nationality/@type<br>• num/@type<br>• occupation/@type<br>• org/@role<br>• person/@role<br>• person/@age<br>• q/@type<br>• rs/@type<br>• space/@dim<br>• title/@type<br>• title/@level<br>• unclear/@reason<br>• unclear/@agent |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <dataRef key="teidata.word"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.enumerated = teidata.word` |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.<br>Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a `<valList>` element. |

### *5.5.6. teidata.gender*

| **teidata.gender** defines the range of attribute values used to represent the gender of a person, persona, or character. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• person/@gender |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.gender = teidata.enumerated` |
| **Note** | Values for attributes using this datatype may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.<br>Values for this datatype should not be used to encode morphological gender (cf. `<gen>`, *msd* as defined in att.linguistic, and 9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms). |

### *5.5.7. teidata.language*

**teidata.language** defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• foreign/@xml:lang<br>• language/@ident<br>• textLang/@mainLang<br>• textLang/@otherLangs |
| **Content model** | `<content> <alternate> <dataRef name="language"/> <valList> <valItem ident=""/> </valList> </alternate> </content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.language = xsd:language \| ( "" )` |
| **Note** | The values for this attribute are language 'tags' as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.<br>A 'language tag', per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.<br>**language** The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.<br>**script** The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.<br>**region** Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm.<br>**variant** An IANA-registered variation. These codes 'are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags'.<br>**extension** An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.<br>**private use** An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter *x* (i.e., starts with `x-`) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document |

| | |
|---|---|
| | that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.<br>There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been 'grandfathered' from previous specifications.<br>Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with `x-`, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header.<br>Examples include<br>**sn** Shona<br>**zh-TW** Taiwanese<br>**zh-Hant-HK** Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong<br>**en-SL** English as spoken in Sierra Leone<br>**pl** Polish<br>**es-MX** Spanish as spoken in Mexico<br>**es-419** Spanish as spoken in Latin America<br>The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML. |

### *5.5.8. teidata.name*

| **teidata.name** defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | `<content> <dataRef name="Name"/> </content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.name = xsd:Name` |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see https://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits. |

### *5.5.9. teidata.numeric*

| **teidata.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• num/@value |
| **Content model** | `<content> <alternate> <dataRef name="double"/> <dataRef name="token" restriction="(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)"/> <dataRef name="decimal"/> </alternate> </content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.numeric = xsd:double \| token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } \| xsd:decimal` |
| **Note** | Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, ‘E notation’, a variant of ‘exponential notation’, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.<br>A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2. |

### *5.5.10. teidata.outputMeasurement*

| **teidata.outputMeasurement** defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | <content><br><dataRef name="token"<br>restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%\|cm\|mm\|in\|pt\|pc\|px\|em\|ex\|ch\|rem\|vw\|vh\|vmin\|vmax)"/><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.outputMeasurement =<br>token<br>{<br>pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%\|cm\|mm\|in\|pt\|pc\|px\|em\|ex\|ch\|rem\|vw\|vh\|vmin\|vmax)"<br>} |
| **Example** | <figure><br><head>The TEI Logo</head><br><figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath, all on a white background.</figDesc><br><graphic height="600px" width="600px"<br>url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/><br></figure> |
| **Note** | These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft. |

### *5.5.11. teidata.pattern*

| **teidata.pattern** defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | <content><br><dataRef name="token"/><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.pattern = token |
| **Note** | A regular expression, often called a *pattern*, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings *Handel*, *Händel*, and *Haendel* can be described by the pattern `H(ä\|ae?)ndel` (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern `H(ä\|ae?)ndel` *matches* each of the three strings)<br>Wikipedia<br>This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema. |

### *5.5.12. teidata.point*

| **teidata.point** defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <dataRef name="token"`<br>`  restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.point = token { pattern = "(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)" }` |
| **Example** | `<facsimile>`<br>` <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="400" lry="280">`<br>`  <zone points="220,100 300,210 170,250 123,234">`<br>`  <graphic url="handwriting.png"/>`<br>`  </zone>`<br>` </surface>`<br>`</facsimile>` |
| **Note** | A point is defined by two numeric values, which should be expressed as decimal numbers. Neither number can end in a decimal point. E.g., both 0.0,84.2 and 0,84 are allowed, but 0.,84. is not. |

### *5.5.13. teidata.pointer*

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• catRef/@target<br>• catRef/@scheme<br>• change/@target<br>• keywords/@scheme<br>• metamark/@target<br>• occupation/@scheme<br>• occupation/@code<br>• pb/@facs<br>• rs/@ref<br>• space/@resp |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <dataRef restriction="\S+" name="anyURI"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI { pattern = "\S+" }` |
| **Note** | The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 *Internationalized Resource Identifiers* (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example, `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%` is encoded as `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25` while `http://-mr----nx.mirbg4--n✖###.#########-#####.####/` is encoded as `http://ckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/` |

### *5.5.14. teidata.probCert*

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.probCert** defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <alternate>`<br>`  <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>`<br>`  <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>`<br>` </alternate>`<br>`</content>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Declaration** | `teidata.probCert = teidata.probability \| teidata.certainty` |

### *5.5.15. teidata.probability*

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.probCert |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <dataRef name="double"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.probability = xsd:double` |
| **Note** | Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*. |

### *5.5.16. teidata.replacement*

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.replacement** defines attribute values which contain a replacement template. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <textNode/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.replacement = text` |

### *5.5.17. teidata.sex*

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.sex** defines the range of attribute values used to identify the sex of an organism. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• person/@sex<br>• sex/@value |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.sex = teidata.enumerated` |
| **Note** | Values for attributes using this datatype may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard. |

### *5.5.18. teidata.temporal.iso*

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.temporal.iso** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <alternate>`<br>`  <dataRef name="date"/>`<br>`  <dataRef name="gYear"/>`<br>`  <dataRef name="gMonth"/>`<br>`  <dataRef name="gDay"/>`<br>`  <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>`<br>`  <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>`<br>`  <dataRef name="time"/>`<br>`  <dataRef name="dateTime"/>`<br>`  <dataRef name="token"` |

| | |
|---|---|
| | <pre>  restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/>
 </alternate>
</content></pre> |
| **Declaration** | <pre>teidata.temporal.iso =
   xsd:date
 | xsd:gYear
 | xsd:gMonth
 | xsd:gDay
 | xsd:gYearMonth
 | xsd:gMonthDay
 | xsd:time
 | xsd:dateTime
 | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" }</pre> |
| **Note** | If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.<br>For all representations for which ISO 8601:2004 describes both a *basic* and an *extended* format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format. |

### *5.5.19. teidata.temporal.w3c*

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | <pre><content>
 <alternate>
  <dataRef name="date"/>
  <dataRef name="gYear"/>
  <dataRef name="gMonth"/>
  <dataRef name="gDay"/>
  <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>
  <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>
  <dataRef name="time"/>
  <dataRef name="dateTime"/>
 </alternate>
</content></pre> |
| **Declaration** | <pre>teidata.temporal.w3c =
   xsd:date
 | xsd:gYear
 | xsd:gMonth
 | xsd:gDay
 | xsd:gYearMonth
 | xsd:gMonthDay
 | xsd:time
 | xsd:dateTime</pre> |
| **Note** | If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used. |

### *5.5.20. teidata.text*

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• distinct/@time<br>• distinct/@space<br>• distinct/@social<br>• metamark/@style<br>• pb/@n |
| **Content model** | <pre><content>
 <dataRef name="string"/>
</content></pre> |
| **Declaration** | <pre>teidata.text = string</pre> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘token’ in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted. |

### *5.5.21. teidata.truthValue*

| **teidata.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• listChange/@ordered |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<dataRef name="boolean"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean` |
| **Note** | The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.<br>This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: teidata.xTruthValue. |

### *5.5.22. teidata.version*

| **teidata.version** defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• TEI/@version |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<dataRef name="token"`<br>`restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }` |
| **Note** | The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (http://unicode.org/versions/). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied. |

### *5.5.23. teidata.versionNumber*

| **teidata.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<dataRef name="token"`<br>`restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.versionNumber =`<br>`token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }` |

### *5.5.24. teidata.word*

| **teidata.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.enumeratedElement:<br>• del/@rend<br>• metamark/@function |
| **Content model** | |

| | |
|---|---|
| | <content><br> <dataRef name="token"<br> restriction="[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+"/><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.word = token { pattern = "[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+" } |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace. |

### *5.5.25. teidata.xTruthValue*

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.xTruthValue** (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | <content><br> <alternate><br> <dataRef name="boolean"/><br> <valList><br> <valItem ident="unknown"/><br> <valItem ident="inapplicable"/><br> </valList><br> </alternate><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean \| ( "unknown" \| "inapplicable" ) |
| **Note** | In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype teidata.TruthValue. |

### *5.5.26. teidata.xpath*

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.xpath** defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | <content><br> <textNode/><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.xpath = text |
| **Note** | Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in 6.2..<br>When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP. |